

ISO 20022

## Exceptions And Investigations - Modernisation - Maintenance 2024 - 2025

# Message Definition Report - Part 2

Approved by the Payments SEG on 04 February 2025

This document provides details of the Message Definitions for Exceptions And Investigations - Modernisation - Maintenance 2024 - 2025.

February 2025

# Table of Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Message Set Overview</b> .....	3
1.1	List of MessageDefinitions .....	3
<b>2</b>	<b>camt.110.001.01 InvestigationRequestV01</b> .....	4
2.1	MessageDefinition Functionality .....	4
2.2	Structure .....	5
2.3	Constraints .....	5
2.4	Message Building Blocks .....	8
<b>3</b>	<b>camt.111.001.02 InvestigationResponseV02</b> .....	20
3.1	MessageDefinition Functionality .....	20
3.2	Structure .....	21
3.3	Constraints .....	22
3.4	Message Building Blocks .....	24
<b>4</b>	<b>Message Items Types</b> .....	40
4.1	MessageComponents .....	40
4.2	Message Datatypes .....	266

# 1 Message Set Overview

## Introduction

This document describes the Exceptions And Investigations - Modernisation message set. It includes the new version of the MessageDefinitions that have been added as part of the maintenance cycle 2024-2025 (See MCR #252) and approved by the Payments Standards Evaluation Group on 04 February 2025.

## 1.1 List of MessageDefinitions

The following table lists all MessageDefinitions described in this book.

MessageDefinition	Definition
camt.110.001.01 InvestigationRequestV01	The InvestigationRequest message is sent between agents or parties to create a payment or account related investigation or request a status update on an open payment or account related investigation.
camt.111.001.02 InvestigationResponseV02	The InvestigationResponse message is sent between agents to provide a response or status update on an investigation.

## 2 **camt.110.001.01** **InvestigationRequestV01**

### 2.1 **MessageDefinition Functionality**

#### Scope

The InvestigationRequest message is sent between agents or parties to create a payment or account related investigation or request a status update on an open payment or account related investigation.

#### Usage

The InvestigationRequest message can be used to create an investigation for these business scenarios

-

- unable to apply;
- request for information;
- request value date adjustment;
- claim non-receipt;
- request debit authorisation;
- request use of funds;
- payment initiation not confirmed;
- miscellaenous business scenarios.

The InvestigationRequest message covers one and only one transaction or entry at a time in most business scenarios. In a request for information an agent or party may refer to more than one transaction within the Narrative element. For all other scenarios if an agent or party needs to create investigations that relate to several transactions or entries then several InvestigationRequest messages should be sent.

#### Outline

The InvestigationRequestV01 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. InvestigationRequest

Details related to the investigation request.

B. InvestigationData

Provides all details of the reason for the investigation request.

C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 2.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <InvstgtnReq>	[1..1]			
	<b>InvestigationRequest</b> <InvstgtnReq>	[1..1]		C23	8
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		9
	<b>RequestorInvestigationIdentification</b> <RqstrInvstgtnId>	[0..1]	Text		9
	<b>ResponderInvestigationIdentification</b> <RspndrInvstgtnId>	[0..1]	Text		10
	<b>EIR</b> <EIR>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		10
	<b>RequestAction</b> <ReqActn>	[0..1]	±	C17, C18	10
	<b>InvestigationType</b> <InvstgtnTp>	[1..1]	±		10
	<b>InvestigationSubType</b> <InvstgtnSubTp>	[0..1]	±		11
	<b>UnderlyingInstrument</b> <UndrlygInstrm>	[0..1]	±		11
	<b>Underlying</b> <Undrlyg>	[1..1]	±		11
	<b>Requestor</b> <Rqstr>	[1..1]	±		13
	<b>Responder</b> <Rspndr>	[1..1]	±		13
	<b>RequestOriginator</b> <ReqOrgtr>	[0..1]	±		13
	<b>ExpectedResponder</b> <XpctdRspndr>	[0..1]	±		14
	<b>ServiceLevel</b> <SvcLvl>	[0..*]	±		14
	<b>InvestigationData</b> <InvstgtnData>	[1..*]		C15	14
	<b>Sequence</b> <Seq>	[0..1]	Quantity	C16	15
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[1..1]	±		15
	<b>ReasonSubType</b> <RsnSubTp>	[0..1]	±		16
	<b>AdditionalRequestData</b> <AddtlReqData>	[0..1]	±		16
	<b>RelatedInvestigationData</b> <RltdInvstgtnData>	[0..1]	±		17
	<b>EnclosedFile</b> <NclsdFile>	[0..*]	±		17
	<b>RelatedFileData</b> <RltdFileData>	[0..*]	±		18
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C29	19

## 2.3 Constraints

### C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with

the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**C3 AmendmentIndicatorFalseRule**

If AmendmentIndicator is false, then AmendmentInformationDetails is not allowed.

**C4 AmendmentIndicatorTrueRule**

If AmendmentIndicator is true, then AmendmentInformationDetails must be present.

**C5 AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C6 BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C7 Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**C8 CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C9 CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C10 IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**C11 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

**C12 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

**C13 InstructedReimbursementAgentAccountRule**

If InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then InstructedReimbursementAgent must be present.

**C14 InstructingReimbursementAgentAccountRule**

If InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then InstructingReimbursementAgent must be present.

**C15 InvestigationReasonAndAdditionalRequestDataRule**

If Reason/Code is Narrative (NARR), then AdditionalRequestData must be present.

**C16 NumberRule**

If Number is negative, then Sign must be present.

**C17 ObjectionActionReasonRule**

If Action/Code is equal to RQOB for Request Objection, ActionReason must be present.

**C18 ObjectionActionRule**

External code RQOB for Request Objection can only be populated in Action/Code when Requestor has already received a response from the Responder.

**C19 OriginalIdentificationRule**

Either OriginalInstructionIdentification, OriginalEndToEndIdentification or OriginalUETR must be present.

**C20 OriginalIdentificationRule**

Either OriginalInstructionIdentification, OriginalEndToEndIdentification, OriginalTransactionIdentification or OriginalUETR must be present.

**C21 OriginalRequestedDateRule**

Either RequestedExecutionDate or RequestedCollectionDate must be present.

**C22 OriginalStatementIdentificationOrEntryReferencePresenceRule**

OriginalStatementIdentification or OriginalEntryReference must be present, both may be present.

**C23 ResponderInvestigationIdentificationGuideline**

Where the ResponderInvestigationIdentification has previously been provided to the requestor as part of an earlier response the ResponderInvestigationIdentification should be present.

**C24 SettlementMethodAgentRule**

If SettlementMethod is equal to INDA or INGA, then ReimbursementAgent(s) and ClearingSystem are not allowed.

**C25 SettlementMethodClearingRule**

If SettlementMethod is equal to CLRG, then SettlementAccount and ReimbursementAgent(s) are not allowed.

**C26 SettlementMethodCoverAgentRule**

If SettlementMethod is equal to COVE, then InstructedReimbursementAgent or InstructingReimbursementAgent must be present.

**C27 SettlementMethodCoverRule**

If SettlementMethod is equal to COVE, then SettlementAccount and ClearingSystem are not allowed.

**C28 StatusReasonRule**

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AdditionalInformation must be present.

**C29 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

**C30 ThirdReimbursementAgentAccountRule**

If ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then ThirdReimbursementAgent must be present.

**C31 ThirdReimbursementAgentRule**

If ThirdReimbursementAgent is present, then InstructingReimbursementAgent and InstructedReimbursementAgent must both be present.

**C32 ValidationByTable**

Must be a valid terrestrial language.

## 2.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 2.4.1 InvestigationRequest <InvstgtnReq>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Details related to the investigation request.

*Impacted by:* C23 "ResponderInvestigationIdentificationGuideline"

**InvestigationRequest <InvstgtnReq>** contains the following **InvestigationRequest2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		9
	<b>RequestorInvestigationIdentification</b> <RqstrInvstgtnId>	[0..1]	Text		9
	<b>ResponderInvestigationIdentification</b> <RspndrInvstgtnId>	[0..1]	Text		10
	<b>EIR</b> <EIR>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		10
	<b>RequestAction</b> <ReqActn>	[0..1]	±	C17, C18	10
	<b>InvestigationType</b> <InvstgtnTp>	[1..1]	±		10
	<b>InvestigationSubType</b> <InvstgtnSubTp>	[0..1]	±		11
	<b>UnderlyingInstrument</b> <UndrlygInstrm>	[0..1]	±		11
	<b>Underlying</b> <Undrlyg>	[1..1]	±		11
	<b>Requestor</b> <Rqstr>	[1..1]	±		13
	<b>Responder</b> <Rspndr>	[1..1]	±		13
	<b>RequestOriginator</b> <ReqOrgtr>	[0..1]	±		13
	<b>ExpectedResponder</b> <XpctdRspndr>	[0..1]	±		14
	<b>ServiceLevel</b> <SvcLvl>	[0..*]	±		14

#### Constraints

- **ResponderInvestigationIdentificationGuideline**

Where the ResponderInvestigationIdentification has previously been provided to the requestor as part of an earlier response the ResponderInvestigationIdentification should be present.

#### 2.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the requestor, and sent to the responder to unambiguously identify the message.

*Usage:* The requestor has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per responder for a pre-agreed period.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 2.4.1.2 RequestorInvestigationIdentification <RqstrInvstgtnId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the requestor, to unambiguously identify the investigation for the requestor.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

### 2.4.1.3 ResponderInvestigationIdentification <RspndrInvstgtnId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the responder, to unambiguously identify the investigation for the responder.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 291

### 2.4.1.4 EIR <EIR>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identifier to provide the end-to-end reference of an investigation.

Datatype: "UUIDv4Identifier" on page 287

### 2.4.1.5 RequestAction <ReqActn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies an action the responder should now take in regard to the investigation and the reason for the action.

Impacted by: C17 "ObjectionActionReasonRule", C18 "ObjectionActionRule"

RequestAction <ReqActn> contains the following elements (see "InvestigationRequestAction1" on page 111 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Action <Actn>	[1..1]			112
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		112
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		112
	ActionReason <ActnRsn>	[0..1]	±	C28	112

#### Constraints

- **ObjectionActionReasonRule**

If Action/Code is equal to RQOB for Request Objection, ActionReason must be present.

On Condition

/Action/Code is within DataType <<Code>> ValidationRuleRequestObjection1Code

And /Action is present

And /Action/Code is present

Following Must be True

/ActionReason Must be present

- **ObjectionActionRule**

External code RQOB for Request Objection can only be populated in Action/Code when Requestor has already received a response from the Responder.

### 2.4.1.6 InvestigationType <InvstgtnTp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of investigation.

**InvestigationType <InvstgtnTp>** contains one of the following elements (see "[InvestigationType1Choice](#)" on page 132 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		133

#### 2.4.1.7 InvestigationSubType <InvstgtnSubTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Sub type of an investigation.

Usage: The investigation sub type element may be used to identify a department within an agent to whom the investigation can be directed to, for routing purposes. It should only be used when the investigation type could logically be directed to different departments within an agent, for example a request for information.

**InvestigationSubType <InvstgtnSubTp>** contains one of the following elements (see "[InvestigationSubType1Choice](#)" on page 107 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		107
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		107

#### 2.4.1.8 UnderlyingInstrument <UndrlyglInstrm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the instrument or product to which the investigation refers.

**UnderlyingInstrument <UndrlyglInstrm>** contains one of the following elements (see "[UnderlyingInvestigationInstrument1Choice](#)" on page 110 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		110
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		111

#### 2.4.1.9 Underlying <Undrlyg>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the subject to which the investigation refers, for example a payment or statement entry.

**Underlying <Undrlyg>** contains one of the following elements (see "[UnderlyingData2Choice](#)" on page 115 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Initiation <Initn>	[1..1]		C19, C21	117
	OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnlGrpInf>	[0..1]			118
	OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgId>	[1..1]	Text		118
	OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		118
	OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		118
	OriginalMessageDeliveryChannel <OrgnlMsgDlvryChanl>	[0..1]	Text		119
	OriginalPaymentInformationIdentification <OrgnlPmtInfId>	[0..1]	Text		119
	OriginalInstructionIdentification <OrgnlInstrId>	[0..1]	Text		119
	OriginalEndToEndIdentification <OrgnlEndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		119
	OriginalUETR <OrgnlUETR>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		119
	OriginalInstructedAmount <OrgnlInstdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	119
	RequestedExecutionDate <ReqdExctnDt>	[0..1]	±		120
	RequestedCollectionDate <ReqdColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		120
	OriginalTransactionReference <OrgnlTxRef>	[0..1]	±		120
	OriginalServiceLevel <OrgnlSvcLvl>	[0..1]			123
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		123
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		123
Or	Interbank <IntrBk>	[1..1]		C20	123
	OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnlGrpInf>	[0..1]			124
	OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgId>	[1..1]	Text		125
	OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		125
	OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		125
	OriginalMessageDeliveryChannel <OrgnlMsgDlvryChanl>	[0..1]	Text		125
	OriginalInstructionIdentification <OrgnlInstrId>	[0..1]	Text		125
	OriginalEndToEndIdentification <OrgnlEndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		125
	OriginalTransactionIdentification <OrgnlTxId>	[0..1]	Text		126
	OriginalUETR <OrgnlUETR>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		126
	OriginalInterbankSettlementAmount <OrgnlIntrBkSttlmAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	126

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalInterbankSettlementDate <OrgnlIntrBkSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		126
	OriginalTransactionReference <OrgnlTxRef>	[0..1]	±		126
	OriginalServiceLevel <OrgnlSvcLvl>	[0..1]			129
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		129
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		129
Or	StatementEntry <StmntNtry>	[1..1]	±	C22	129
Or	Account <Acct>	[1..1]	±	C12, C11	130
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	±		131

#### 2.4.1.10 Requestor <Rqstr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the agent or party requesting a new investigation is opened or status update for an existing investigation.

**Requestor <Rqstr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 174 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		174
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		174

#### 2.4.1.11 Responder <Rspndr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the agent or party expected to open a new investigation or provide a status update for an existing investigation.

**Responder <Rspndr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 174 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		174
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		174

#### 2.4.1.12 RequestOriginator <ReqOrgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the agent or party who has originated the request.

*Usage:* When the Requestor has forwarded the investigation from another party, it is recommended to provide the RequestOriginator in this element.

**RequestOriginator <ReqOrgtr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 174 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		174
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		174

#### 2.4.1.13 ExpectedResponder <XpctdRspndr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the agent or party who the requestor of the investigation expects the responder to contact in relation to the investigation request.

**ExpectedResponder <XpctdRspndr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 174 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		174
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		174

#### 2.4.1.14 ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the requestor and responder.

**ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>** contains one of the following elements (see "[InvestigationServiceLevel1Choice](#)" on page 111 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		111
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		111

### 2.4.2 InvestigationData <InvstgtnData>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Provides all details of the reason for the investigation request.

*Impacted by:* [C15 "InvestigationReasonAndAdditionalRequestDataRule"](#)

**InvestigationData <InvstgtnData>** contains the following **InvestigationReason2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Sequence</b> <Seq>	[0..1]	Quantity	C16	15
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[1..1]	±		15
	<b>ReasonSubType</b> <RsnSubTp>	[0..1]	±		16
	<b>AdditionalRequestData</b> <AddtlReqData>	[0..1]	±		16
	<b>RelatedInvestigationData</b> <RltdInvstgtnData>	[0..1]	±		17
	<b>EnclosedFile</b> <NclsdFile>	[0..*]	±		17
	<b>RelatedFileData</b> <RltdFileData>	[0..*]	±		18

#### Constraints

- **InvestigationReasonAndAdditionalRequestDataRule**

If Reason/Code is Narrative (NARR), then AdditionalRequestData must be present.

On Condition

/Reason/Code is within DataType <<Code>> ValidationRuleNarrative1Code

Following Must be True

/AdditionalRequestData[\*] Must be present

#### 2.4.2.1 Sequence <Seq>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Where the InvestigationData block is repeated this identifies a numeric reference for the Reason that can be used for reconciliation of data.

*Impacted by:* C16 "NumberRule"

*Datatype:* "Max3Number" on page 288

#### Constraints

- **NumberRule**

If Number is negative, then Sign must be present.

#### 2.4.2.2 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the investigation being opened.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains one of the following elements (see "InvestigationReason1Choice" on page 132 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		132

### 2.4.2.3 ReasonSubType <RsnSubTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Sub type which further identifies the reason for an investigation being opened.

**ReasonSubType <RsnSubTp>** contains one of the following elements (see "[InvestigationReasonSubType1Choice](#)" on page 105 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		105
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		105

### 2.4.2.4 AdditionalRequestData <AddtlReqData>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Additional information relating to the request.

**AdditionalRequestData <AddtlReqData>** contains one of the following elements (see "[AdditionalRequestData1Choice](#)" on page 100 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	RequestedDebitAuthorisation <ReqdDbtAuthstn>	[1..1]			100
	CancellationReason <CxIRsn>	[1..1]	±		101
	AmountToDebit <AmtToDbt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	101
	Account <Acct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	101
	ValueDateToDebit <ValDtToDbt>	[0..1]	Date		102
	AdditionalCancellationReasonInformation <AddtlCxIRsnInf>	[0..*]	Text		102
Or	RequestedCompensation <ReqdCompstn>	[1..1]			102
	CompensationAccount <CompstnAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	102
	Period <Prd>	[1..1]	±		103
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C9	103
	ExpectedValueDate <XpctdValDt>	[0..1]	Date		104
	InterestRate <IntrstRate>	[0..1]	Rate		104
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..*]	Text		104
Or	RequestedValuation <ReqdValtn>	[1..1]			104
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		104
Or}	RequestNarrative <ReqNrrtv>	[1..1]	Text		104

### 2.4.2.5 RelatedInvestigationData <RltdInvstgtnData>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Additional information related to the request that will be sent or made available separately, such as a copy of a passport.

**RelatedInvestigationData <RltdInvstgtnData>** contains the following elements (see "RelatedInvestigationData1" on page 113 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InvestigationIdentification <InvstgtnId>	[0..1]	Text		113
	Location <Lctn>	[0..*]			113
	Method <Mtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	ElectronicAddress <ElectrncAdr>	[0..1]	Text		114
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]			114
	Name <Nm>	[1..1]	Text		114
	Address <Adr>	[1..1]	±		115

### 2.4.2.6 EnclosedFile <NclsdFile>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Document enclosed in the message.

*Usage:* The use of the EnclosedFile element must be bilaterally agreed.

**EnclosedFile <NclsdFile>** contains the following elements (see "Document12" on page 56 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		57
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		57
	IssueDate <IsseDt>	[1..1]	±		57
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		58
	LanguageCode <LangCd>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C32	58
	Format <Frmt>	[1..1]			58
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		58
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		58
	FileName <FileNm>	[0..1]	Text		59
	DigitalSignature <DgtlSgntr>	[0..1]			59
	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		59
	Signature <Sgntr>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		59
	Enclosure <Nclsr>	[1..1]	Binary		60

#### 2.4.2.7 RelatedFileData <RltdFileData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Details of a document not enclosed in the message that will be sent or made available separately.

**RelatedFileData <RltdFileData>** contains the following elements (see "FileData1" on page 105 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		105
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		106
	IssueDate <IsseDt>	[0..1]	±		106
	Format <Frmt>	[0..1]			106
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		106
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		106
	FileName <FileNm>	[0..1]	Text		107
	NetworkReference <NtwkRef>	[0..1]	Text		107
	FileLocationElectronicAddress <FileLctnElctrcAdr>	[0..1]	Text		107

## 2.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C29 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 170 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		170
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		171

### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

# 3 **camt.111.001.02 InvestigationResponseV02**

## 3.1 **MessageDefinition Functionality**

### Scope

The InvestigationResponse message is sent between agents to provide a response or status update on an investigation.

### Usage

The InvestigationResponse message should be used to respond to an InvestigationRequest message. The responses cover these business scenarios -

- unable to apply;
- request for information;
- request value date adjustment;
- claim non-receipt;
- request debit authorisation;
- request use of funds;
- payment initiation not confirmed;
- miscellaenous business scenarios.

The InvestigationResponse message covers one and only one transaction or entry at a time except when responding to some requests for information.

### Outline

The InvestigationResponseV02 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

#### A. InvestigationResponse

Provides all details of the response to the investigation request.

#### B. OriginalInvestigationRequest

Unambiguous identification of the original investigation request.

#### C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 3.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <InvstgtnRspn>	[1..1]			
	<b>InvestigationResponse</b> <InvstgtnRspn>	[1..1]			24
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <Msgld>	[1..1]	Text		25
	<b>ResponderInvestigationIdentification</b> <RspndrInvstgtnId>	[0..1]	Text		25
	<b>InvestigationStatus</b> <InvstgtnSts>	[1..1]	±		25
	<b>NextResponder</b> <NxtRspndr>	[0..1]	±		26
	<b>InvestigationData</b> <InvstgtnData>	[0..*]		C15	26
	<b>OriginalInvestigationSequence</b> <OrgnlInvstgtnSeq>	[0..1]	Quantity	C16	27
	<b>OriginalInvestigationReason</b> <OrgnlInvstgtnRsn>	[0..1]	±		27
	<b>OriginalInvestigationReasonSubType</b> <OrgnlInvstgtnRsnSubTp>	[0..1]	±		27
	<b>ResponseData</b> <RspnData>	[1..1]	±		27
	<b>RelatedInvestigationData</b> <RltdInvstgtnData>	[0..1]	±		30
	<b>EnclosedFile</b> <NclsdFile>	[0..*]	±		31
	<b>RelatedFileData</b> <RltdFileData>	[0..*]	±		31
	<b>ResponseOriginator</b> <RspnOrgtr>	[0..1]	±		32
	<b>OriginalInvestigationRequest</b> <OrgnlInvstgtnReq>	[1..1]		C23	32
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <Msgld>	[1..1]	Text		33
	<b>RequestorInvestigationIdentification</b> <RqstrInvstgtnId>	[0..1]	Text		33
	<b>ResponderInvestigationIdentification</b> <RspndrInvstgtnId>	[0..1]	Text		34
	<b>EIR</b> <EIR>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		34
	<b>RequestAction</b> <ReqActn>	[0..1]	±	C17, C18	34
	<b>InvestigationType</b> <InvstgtnTp>	[1..1]	±		34
	<b>InvestigationSubType</b> <InvstgtnSubTp>	[0..1]	±		35
	<b>UnderlyingInstrument</b> <UndrlygInstrm>	[0..1]	±		35
	<b>Underlying</b> <Undrlyg>	[0..1]	±		35
	<b>Requestor</b> <Rqstr>	[1..1]	±		37
	<b>Responder</b> <Rspndr>	[1..1]	±		37
	<b>RequestOriginator</b> <ReqOrgtr>	[0..1]	±		37
	<b>ExpectedResponder</b> <XpctdRspndr>	[0..1]	±		38

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>ServiceLevel</b> <SvcLvl>	[0..*]	±		38
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C30	38

### 3.3 Constraints

#### C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### C3 AmendmentIndicatorFalseRule

If AmendmentIndicator is false, then AmendmentInformationDetails is not allowed.

#### C4 AmendmentIndicatorTrueRule

If AmendmentIndicator is true, then AmendmentInformationDetails must be present.

#### C5 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

#### C6 BICFI

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

#### C7 Country

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

#### C8 CurrencyAmount

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### C9 CurrencyAmount

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C10 IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**C11 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

**C12 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

**C13 InstructedReimbursementAgentAccountRule**

If InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then InstructedReimbursementAgent must be present.

**C14 InstructingReimbursementAgentAccountRule**

If InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then InstructingReimbursementAgent must be present.

**C15 InvestigationDataGuideline**

InvestigationData should only be repeated when the original investigation request contained multiple occurrences of the InvestigationData block.

**C16 NumberRule**

If Number is negative, then Sign must be present.

**C17 ObjectionActionReasonRule**

If Action/Code is equal to RQOB for Request Objection, ActionReason must be present.

**C18 ObjectionActionRule**

External code RQOB for Request Objection can only be populated in Action/Code when Requestor has already received a response from the Responder.

**C19 OriginalIdentificationRule**

Either OriginalInstructionIdentification, OriginalEndToEndIdentification or OriginalUETR must be present.

**C20 OriginalIdentificationRule**

Either OriginalInstructionIdentification, OriginalEndToEndIdentification, OriginalTransactionIdentification or OriginalUETR must be present.

**C21 OriginalRequestedDateRule**

Either RequestedExecutionDate or RequestedCollectionDate must be present.

**C22 OriginalStatementIdentificationOrEntryReferencePresenceRule**

OriginalStatementIdentification or OriginalEntryReference must be present, both may be present.

**C23 ResponderInvestigationIdentificationGuideline**

Where the ResponderInvestigationIdentification has previously been provided to the requestor as part of an earlier response the ResponderInvestigationIdentification should be present.

**C24 SettlementMethodAgentRule**

If SettlementMethod is equal to INDA or INGA, then ReimbursementAgent(s) and ClearingSystem are not allowed.

**C25 SettlementMethodClearingRule**

If SettlementMethod is equal to CLRG, then SettlementAccount and ReimbursementAgent(s) are not allowed.

**C26 SettlementMethodCoverAgentRule**

If SettlementMethod is equal to COVE, then InstructedReimbursementAgent or InstructingReimbursementAgent must be present.

**C27 SettlementMethodCoverRule**

If SettlementMethod is equal to COVE, then SettlementAccount and ClearingSystem are not allowed.

**C28 StatusReasonRule**

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AdditionalInformation must be present.

**C29 StatusReasonRule**

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AdditionalInformation must be present.

**C30 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

**C31 ThirdReimbursementAgentAccountRule**

If ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then ThirdReimbursementAgent must be present.

**C32 ThirdReimbursementAgentRule**

If ThirdReimbursementAgent is present, then InstructingReimbursementAgent and InstructedReimbursementAgent must both be present.

**C33 ValidationByTable**

Must be a valid terrestrial language.

## 3.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 3.4.1 InvestigationResponse <InvstgtnRspn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides all details of the response to the investigation request.

**InvestigationResponse <InvstgtnRspn>** contains the following **InvestigationResponse9** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <Msgld>	[1..1]	Text		25
	<b>ResponderInvestigationIdentification</b> <RspndrInvstgtnId>	[0..1]	Text		25
	<b>InvestigationStatus</b> <InvstgtnSts>	[1..1]	±		25
	<b>NextResponder</b> <NxtRspndr>	[0..1]	±		26
	<b>InvestigationData</b> <InvstgtnData>	[0..*]		C15	26
	<b>OriginalInvestigationSequence</b> <OrgnlInvstgtnSeq>	[0..1]	Quantity	C16	27
	<b>OriginalInvestigationReason</b> <OrgnlInvstgtnRsn>	[0..1]	±		27
	<b>OriginalInvestigationReasonSubType</b> <OrgnlInvstgtnRsnSubTp>	[0..1]	±		27
	<b>ResponseData</b> <RspnData>	[1..1]	±		27
	<b>RelatedInvestigationData</b> <RltdInvstgtnData>	[0..1]	±		30
	<b>EnclosedFile</b> <NclsdFile>	[0..*]	±		31
	<b>RelatedFileData</b> <RltdFileData>	[0..*]	±		31
	<b>ResponseOriginator</b> <RspnOrgtr>	[0..1]	±		32

### 3.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <Msgld>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the responder, and sent to the requestor to unambiguously identify the message.

*Usage:* The responder has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per requestor for a pre-agreed period.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

### 3.4.1.2 ResponderInvestigationIdentification <RspndrInvstgtnId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the responder, to unambiguously identify the responder reference for the investigation.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

### 3.4.1.3 InvestigationStatus <InvstgtnSts>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Status of the investigation request.

**InvestigationStatus <InvstgtnSts>** contains the following elements (see "[InvestigationStatus2](#)" on page 131 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Status <Sts>	[1..1]	CodeSet		131
	StatusReason <StsRsn>	[0..1]			131
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		132

#### 3.4.1.4 NextResponder <NxtRspndr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the party or agent the responder is awaiting a response from.

Usage: When the Responder has forwarded the investigation to another party, it is recommended to provide the NextResponder element.

**NextResponder <NxtRspndr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 174 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		174
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		174

#### 3.4.1.5 InvestigationData <InvstgtnData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides the response to the request.

*Impacted by:* C15 "[InvestigationDataGuideline](#)"

**InvestigationData <InvstgtnData>** contains the following **InvestigationData6** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>OriginalInvestigationSequence</b> <OrgnlInvstgtnSeq>	[0..1]	Quantity	C16	27
	<b>OriginalInvestigationReason</b> <OrgnlInvstgtnRsn>	[0..1]	±		27
	<b>OriginalInvestigationReasonSubType</b> <OrgnlInvstgtnRsnSubTp>	[0..1]	±		27
	<b>ResponseData</b> <RspnData>	[1..1]	±		27
	<b>RelatedInvestigationData</b> <RltdInvstgtnData>	[0..1]	±		30
	<b>EnclosedFile</b> <NclsdFile>	[0..*]	±		31
	<b>RelatedFileData</b> <RltdFileData>	[0..*]	±		31
	<b>ResponseOriginator</b> <RspnOrgtr>	[0..1]	±		32

**Constraints**

- **InvestigationDataGuideline**

InvestigationData should only be repeated when the original investigation request contained multiple occurrences of the InvestigationData block.

**3.4.1.5.1 OriginalInvestigationSequence <OrgnInvstgtnSeq>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Original investigation sequence as provided in the investigation request.

*Impacted by:* [C16 "NumberRule"](#)

*Datatype:* ["Max3Number"](#) on page 288

**Constraints**

- **NumberRule**

If Number is negative, then Sign must be present.

**3.4.1.5.2 OriginalInvestigationReason <OrgnInvstgtnRsn>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Original investigation reason as provided in the investigation request.

**OriginalInvestigationReason <OrgnInvstgtnRsn>** contains one of the following elements (see ["InvestigationReason1Choice"](#) on page 132 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		132

**3.4.1.5.3 OriginalInvestigationReasonSubType <OrgnInvstgtnRsnSubTp>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Original investigation reason sub type as provided in the investigation request.

**OriginalInvestigationReasonSubType <OrgnInvstgtnRsnSubTp>** contains one of the following elements (see ["InvestigationReasonSubType1Choice"](#) on page 105 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		105
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		105

**3.4.1.5.4 ResponseData <RspnData>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Response to the investigation, as provided by the responder.

**ResponseData <RspnData>** contains one of the following elements (see "InvestigationDataRecord7Choice" on page 73 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	DebitAuthorisation <DbtAuthstn>	[1..1]			76
	DebitAuthorisation <DbtAuthstn>	[1..1]	Indicator		76
	AmountToDebit <AmtToDbt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C9	77
	Account <Acct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	77
	ValueDateToDebit <ValDtToDbt>	[0..1]	Date		78
	CommonTransactionIdentification <CmonTxId>	[0..1]	Text		78
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		78
Or	Compensation <Compstn>	[1..1]			78
	Granted <Grantd>	[1..1]	Indicator		79
	InitialAmount <InitlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C9	79
	PaidCharges <PdChrgs>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C9	79
	AmountDue <AmtDue>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C9	80
	ExpectedValueDate <XpctdValDt>	[0..1]	Date		80
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		80
	InterestRate <IntrstRate>	[0..1]	Rate		81
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		81
Or	Valuation <Valtn>	[1..1]			81
	InitialAmount <InitlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C9	81
	DueCharges <DueChrgs>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C9	82
	AmountDue <AmtDue>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C9	82
	CompensationAgent <CompstnAgt>	[0..1]	±		82
	CompensationAccount <CompstnAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	83
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		83
	InterestRate <IntrstRate>	[0..1]	Rate		84
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		84
Or	Confirmation <Conf>	[1..1]			84
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	85
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		86
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[0..1]	Rate		86

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Account <Acct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	86
	BookingDate <BookgDt>	[0..1]	±		87
	ValueDate <ValDt>	[1..1]	±		87
	References <Refs>	[1..1]			87
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		88
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		88
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInflId>	[0..1]	Text		88
	InstructionIdentification <InstrId>	[0..1]	Text		89
	EndToEndIdentification <EndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		89
	UETR <UETR>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		89
	TransactionIdentification <TxId>	[0..1]	Text		89
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		89
	ChequeNumber <ChqNb>	[0..1]	Text		89
	ClearingSystemReference <ClrSysRef>	[0..1]	Text		90
	AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		90
	AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		90
	MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		90
	ProcessingIdentification <PrctlId>	[0..1]	Text		90
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			90
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		91
	Reference <Ref>	[1..1]	Text		91
	Charges <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		91
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		91
Or	TransactionStatus <TxSts>	[1..1]			91
	Status <Sts>	[1..1]			91
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		92
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		92
	StatusReasonInformation <StsRsnInf>	[0..*]	±	C28	92
Or	TransactionData <TxData>	[1..*]			92
	Path <Pth>	[0..1]	Text		93

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Record <Rcrd>	[1..1]			93
{Or	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		94
Or	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C9	94
Or	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet	C5	95
Or	BICFI <BICFI>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet	C6	95
Or	CashAccount <CshAcct>	[1..1]	±	C12, C11	95
Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	Text		96
Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		96
Or	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		96
Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		96
Or	Remittance <Rmt>	[1..1]			97
	Unstructured <Ustrd>	[0..*]	Text		97
	Structured <Strd>	[0..*]	±		97
	Related <Rltd>	[0..10]	±		99
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	Text		99
Or}	ResponseNarrative <RspnNrrtv>	[1..1]	Text		99

### 3.4.1.5.5 RelatedInvestigationData <RltdInvstgtnData>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Additional information that will be sent separately to the message such as a copy of a passport.

**RelatedInvestigationData <RltdInvstgtnData>** contains the following elements (see "RelatedInvestigationData1" on page 113 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InvestigationIdentification <InvstgtnId>	[0..1]	Text		113
	Location <Lctn>	[0..*]			113
	Method <Mtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	ElectronicAddress <ElctrcAdr>	[0..1]	Text		114
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]			114
	Name <Nm>	[1..1]	Text		114
	Address <Adr>	[1..1]	±		115

**3.4.1.5.6 EnclosedFile <NclsdFile>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Document or template enclosed in the message.

Usage: The use of the EnclosedFile element must be bilaterally agreed.

**EnclosedFile <NclsdFile>** contains the following elements (see "Document12" on page 56 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		57
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		57
	IssueDate <IsseDt>	[1..1]	±		57
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		58
	LanguageCode <LangCd>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C32	58
	Format <Frmt>	[1..1]			58
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		58
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		58
	FileName <FileNm>	[0..1]	Text		59
	DigitalSignature <DgtlSgntr>	[0..1]			59
	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		59
	Signature <Sgntr>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		59
	Enclosure <Nclsr>	[1..1]	Binary		60

**3.4.1.5.7 RelatedFileData <RltdFileData>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Details of a document not enclosed in the message that will be sent or made available separately.

**RelatedFileData <RltdFileData>** contains the following elements (see "[FileData1](#)" on page 105 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		105
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		106
	IssueDate <IsseDt>	[0..1]	±		106
	Format <Frmt>	[0..1]			106
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		106
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		106
	FileName <FileNm>	[0..1]	Text		107
	NetworkReference <NtwkRef>	[0..1]	Text		107
	FileLocationElectronicAddress <FileLctnElctrcAdr>	[0..1]	Text		107

#### 3.4.1.5.8 ResponseOriginator <RspnOrgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the agent or party who has originated the response.

*Usage:* The element should only be provided when different from the Responder.

**ResponseOriginator <RspnOrgtr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 174 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		174
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		174

### 3.4.2 OriginalInvestigationRequest <OrgnlInvstgtnReq>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the original investigation request.

*Impacted by:* [C23 "ResponderInvestigationIdentificationGuideline"](#)

**OriginalInvestigationRequest <OrgnlInvstgtnReq>** contains the following **InvestigationRequest3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <Msgld>	[1..1]	Text		33
	<b>RequestorInvestigationIdentification</b> <RqstrInvstgtnId>	[0..1]	Text		33
	<b>ResponderInvestigationIdentification</b> <RspndrInvstgtnId>	[0..1]	Text		34
	<b>EIR</b> <EIR>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		34
	<b>RequestAction</b> <ReqActn>	[0..1]	±	C17, C18	34
	<b>InvestigationType</b> <InvstgtnTp>	[1..1]	±		34
	<b>InvestigationSubType</b> <InvstgtnSubTp>	[0..1]	±		35
	<b>UnderlyingInstrument</b> <UndrlygInstrm>	[0..1]	±		35
	<b>Underlying</b> <Undrlyg>	[0..1]	±		35
	<b>Requestor</b> <Rqstr>	[1..1]	±		37
	<b>Responder</b> <Rspndr>	[1..1]	±		37
	<b>RequestOriginator</b> <ReqOrgtr>	[0..1]	±		37
	<b>ExpectedResponder</b> <XpctdRspndr>	[0..1]	±		38
	<b>ServiceLevel</b> <SvcLvl>	[0..*]	±		38

#### Constraints

- **ResponderInvestigationIdentificationGuideline**

Where the ResponderInvestigationIdentification has previously been provided to the requestor as part of an earlier response the ResponderInvestigationIdentification should be present.

#### 3.4.2.1 MessageIdentification <Msgld>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the requestor, and sent to the responder to unambiguously identify the message.

*Usage:* The requestor has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per responder for a pre-agreed period.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 3.4.2.2 RequestorInvestigationIdentification <RqstrInvstgtnId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the requestor, to unambiguously identify the investigation for the requestor.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

### 3.4.2.3 ResponderInvestigationIdentification <RspndrInvstgtnId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the responder, to unambiguously identify the investigation for the responder.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 291

### 3.4.2.4 EIR <EIR>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identifier to provide the end-to-end reference of an investigation.

Datatype: "UUIDv4Identifier" on page 287

### 3.4.2.5 RequestAction <ReqActn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies an action the responder should now take in regard to the investigation and the reason for the action.

Impacted by: C17 "ObjectionActionReasonRule", C18 "ObjectionActionRule"

RequestAction <ReqActn> contains the following elements (see "InvestigationRequestAction1" on page 111 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Action <Actn>	[1..1]			112
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		112
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		112
	ActionReason <ActnRsn>	[0..1]	±	C28	112

#### Constraints

- **ObjectionActionReasonRule**

If Action/Code is equal to RQOB for Request Objection, ActionReason must be present.

On Condition

/Action/Code is within DataType <<Code>> ValidationRuleRequestObjection1Code

And /Action is present

And /Action/Code is present

Following Must be True

/ActionReason Must be present

- **ObjectionActionRule**

External code RQOB for Request Objection can only be populated in Action/Code when Requestor has already received a response from the Responder.

### 3.4.2.6 InvestigationType <InvstgtnTp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of investigation.

**InvestigationType <InvstgtnTp>** contains one of the following elements (see "[InvestigationType1Choice](#)" on page 132 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		133

### 3.4.2.7 InvestigationSubType <InvstgtnSubTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Sub type of an investigation.

Usage: The investigation sub type element may be used to identify a department within an agent to whom the investigation can be directed to, for routing purposes. It should only be used when the investigation type could logically be directed to different departments within an agent, for example a request for information.

**InvestigationSubType <InvstgtnSubTp>** contains one of the following elements (see "[InvestigationSubType1Choice](#)" on page 107 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		107
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		107

### 3.4.2.8 UnderlyingInstrument <UndrlyglInstrm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the instrument or product to which the investigation refers.

**UnderlyingInstrument <UndrlyglInstrm>** contains one of the following elements (see "[UnderlyingInvestigationInstrument1Choice](#)" on page 110 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		110
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		111

### 3.4.2.9 Underlying <Undrlyg>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the subject to which the investigation refers, for example a payment or statement entry.

**Underlying <Undrlyg>** contains one of the following elements (see "[UnderlyingData2Choice](#)" on page 115 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Initiation <Initn>	[1..1]		C19, C21	117
	OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnlGrpInf>	[0..1]			118
	OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgId>	[1..1]	Text		118
	OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		118
	OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		118
	OriginalMessageDeliveryChannel <OrgnlMsgDlvryChanl>	[0..1]	Text		119
	OriginalPaymentInformationIdentification <OrgnlPmtInfId>	[0..1]	Text		119
	OriginalInstructionIdentification <OrgnlInstrId>	[0..1]	Text		119
	OriginalEndToEndIdentification <OrgnlEndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		119
	OriginalUETR <OrgnlUETR>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		119
	OriginalInstructedAmount <OrgnlInstdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	119
	RequestedExecutionDate <ReqdExctnDt>	[0..1]	±		120
	RequestedCollectionDate <ReqdColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		120
	OriginalTransactionReference <OrgnlTxRef>	[0..1]	±		120
	OriginalServiceLevel <OrgnlSvcLvl>	[0..1]			123
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		123
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		123
Or	Interbank <IntrBk>	[1..1]		C20	123
	OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnlGrpInf>	[0..1]			124
	OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgId>	[1..1]	Text		125
	OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		125
	OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		125
	OriginalMessageDeliveryChannel <OrgnlMsgDlvryChanl>	[0..1]	Text		125
	OriginalInstructionIdentification <OrgnlInstrId>	[0..1]	Text		125
	OriginalEndToEndIdentification <OrgnlEndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		125
	OriginalTransactionIdentification <OrgnlTxId>	[0..1]	Text		126
	OriginalUETR <OrgnlUETR>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		126
	OriginalInterbankSettlementAmount <OrgnlIntrBkSttlmAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	126

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalInterbankSettlementDate <OrgnlIntrBkSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		126
	OriginalTransactionReference <OrgnlTxRef>	[0..1]	±		126
	OriginalServiceLevel <OrgnlSvcLvl>	[0..1]			129
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		129
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		129
Or	StatementEntry <StmntNtry>	[1..1]	±	C22	129
Or	Account <Acct>	[1..1]	±	C12, C11	130
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	±		131

### 3.4.2.10 Requestor <Rqstr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the agent or party requesting a new investigation is opened or status update for an existing investigation.

**Requestor <Rqstr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 174 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		174
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		174

### 3.4.2.11 Responder <Rspndr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the agent or party expected to open a new investigation or provide a status update for an existing investigation.

**Responder <Rspndr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 174 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		174
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		174

### 3.4.2.12 RequestOriginator <ReqOrgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the agent or party who has originated the request.

*Usage:* When the Requestor has forwarded the investigation from another party, it is recommended to provide the RequestOriginator in this element.

**RequestOriginator <ReqOrgtr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 174 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		174
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		174

### 3.4.2.13 ExpectedResponder <XpctdRspndr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the agent or party who the requestor of the investigation expects the responder to contact in relation to the investigation request.

**ExpectedResponder <XpctdRspndr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 174 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		174
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		174

### 3.4.2.14 ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the requestor and responder.

**ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>** contains one of the following elements (see "[InvestigationServiceLevel1Choice](#)" on page 111 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		111
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		111

## 3.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* [C30 "SupplementaryDataRule"](#)

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "[SupplementaryData1](#)" on page 170 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		170
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		171

### **Constraints**

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

# 4 Message Items Types

## 4.1 MessageComponents

### 4.1.1 Account

#### 4.1.1.1 CashAccount40

*Definition:* Provides the details to identify an account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		40
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		40
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	41
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		41
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		41

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
  /Identification Must be present
Or    /Proxy Must be present
```

#### 4.1.1.1.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification for the account between the account owner and the account servicer.

**Identification <Id>** contains one of the following elements (see "[AccountIdentification4Choice](#)" on [page 44](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	IBAN <IBAN>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet	C10	44
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	±		45

#### 4.1.1.1.2 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the nature, or use of the account.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following elements (see "[CashAccountType2Choice](#)" on page 43 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		43
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		43

#### 4.1.1.1.3 Currency <Ccy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the currency in which the account is held.

Usage: Currency should only be used in case one and the same account number covers several currencies

and the initiating party needs to identify which currency needs to be used for settlement on the account.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#)

*Datatype:* "[ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode](#)" on page 268

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 4.1.1.1.4 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the account, as assigned by the account servicing institution, in agreement with the account owner in order to provide an additional means of identification of the account.

Usage: The account name is different from the account owner name. The account name is used in certain user communities to provide a means of identifying the account, in addition to the account owner's identity and the account number.

*Datatype:* "[Max70Text](#)" on page 291

#### 4.1.1.1.5 Proxy <Prxy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies an alternate assumed name for the identification of the account.

**Proxy <Prxy>** contains the following elements (see "[ProxyAccountIdentification1](#)" on page 42 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			42
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		42
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		42
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		42

#### 4.1.1.2 ProxyAccountIdentification1

*Definition:* Information related to a proxy identification of the account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			42
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		42
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		42
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		42

##### 4.1.1.2.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Type of the proxy identification.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **ProxyAccountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		42
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		42

##### 4.1.1.2.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* "[ExternalProxyAccountType1Code](#)" on page 279

##### 4.1.1.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 291

##### 4.1.1.2.2 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification used to indicate the account identification under another specified name.

*Datatype:* "Max2048Text" on page 290

#### 4.1.1.3 CashAccountType2Choice

*Definition:* Nature or use of the account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		43
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		43

##### 4.1.1.3.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Account type, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalCashAccountType1Code" on page 272

##### 4.1.1.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Nature or use of the account in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.1.4 GenericAccountIdentification1

*Definition:* Information related to a generic account identification.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		43
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			43
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		44
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		44
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		44

##### 4.1.1.4.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification assigned by an institution.

*Datatype:* "Max34Text" on page 290

##### 4.1.1.4.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

**SchemeName <SchmeNm>** contains one of the following **AccountSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		44
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		44

#### 4.1.1.4.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalAccountIdentification1Code" on page 272

#### 4.1.1.4.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.1.4.3 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

## 4.1.2 Account Identification

### 4.1.2.1 AccountIdentification4Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the unique identification of an account as assigned by the account servicer.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	IBAN <IBAN>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet	C10	44
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	±		45

#### 4.1.2.1.1 IBAN <IBAN>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* International Bank Account Number (IBAN) - identifier used internationally by financial institutions to uniquely identify the account of a customer. Further specifications of the format and content of the IBAN can be found in the standard ISO 13616 "Banking and related financial services - International Bank Account Number (IBAN)" version 1997-10-01, or later revisions.

*Impacted by:* C10 "IBAN"

*Datatype:* "IBAN2007Identifier" on page 286

**Constraints**

- **IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**4.1.2.1.2 Other <Othr>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification of an account, as assigned by the account servicer, using an identification scheme.

**Other <Othr>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericAccountIdentification1](#)" on page 43 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		43
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			43
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		44
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		44
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		44

**4.1.3 Amount****4.1.3.1 AmountType4Choice**

*Definition:* Specifies the amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	InstructedAmount <InstdAmt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	45
Or}	EquivalentAmount <EqvtAmt>	[1..1]			46
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	46
	CurrencyOfTransfer <CcyOfTrf>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	46

**4.1.3.1.1 InstructedAmount <InstdAmt>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party.

Usage: This amount has to be transported unchanged through the transaction chain.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**4.1.3.1.2 EquivalentAmount <EqvtAmt>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, expressed in the currency of the debtor's account, and the currency in which the amount is to be moved.

**EquivalentAmount <EqvtAmt>** contains the following **EquivalentAmount2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	46
	CurrencyOfTransfer <CcyOfTrf>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	46

**4.1.3.1.2.1 Amount <Amt>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money to be moved between debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency of the debtor's account, and to be moved in a different currency.

Usage: The first agent will convert the equivalent amount into the amount to be moved.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**4.1.3.1.2.2 CurrencyOfTransfer <CcyOfTrf>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the currency of the to be transferred amount, which is different from the currency of the debtor's account.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 268

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

## 4.1.4 Charge

### 4.1.4.1 ChargesRecord3

*Definition:* Provides further individual record details on the charges related to the payment transaction.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	47
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		48
	ChargeIncludedIndicator <ChrgInclInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		48
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			48
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		48
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		49
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		49
	Bearer  	[0..1]	CodeSet		49
	Agent <Agt>	[0..1]	±		49
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			50
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		50
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		50
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	50

#### 4.1.4.1.1 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Transaction charges to be paid by the charge bearer.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**4.1.4.1.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the charges amount is a credit or a debit amount.

Usage: A zero amount is considered to be a credit.

*Datatype:* "CreditDebitCode" on page 270

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

**4.1.4.1.3 ChargeIncludedIndicator <ChrgInclInd>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the charge should be included in the amount or is added as pre-advice.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "ChargeIncludedIndicator" on page 287):

- *Meaning When True:* Included
- *Meaning When False:* Pre-advised

**4.1.4.1.4 Type <Tp>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of charge.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **ChargeType3Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		48
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		49

**4.1.4.1.4.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Charge type, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalChargeType1Code" on page 273

**4.1.4.1.4.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Type of charge in a proprietary form, as defined by the issuer.**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification3](#)" on page 72 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		72
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		72

**4.1.4.1.5 Rate <Rate>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Rate used to calculate the amount of the charge or fee.*Datatype:* "[PercentageRate](#)" on page 288**4.1.4.1.6 Bearer <Br>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Specifies which party/parties will bear the charges associated with the processing of the payment transaction.*Datatype:* "[ChargeBearerType1Code](#)" on page 269

CodeName	Name	Definition
DEBT	BorneByDebtor	All transaction charges are to be borne by the debtor.
CRED	BorneByCreditor	All transaction charges are to be borne by the creditor.
SHAR	Shared	In a credit transfer context, means that transaction charges on the sender side are to be borne by the debtor, transaction charges on the receiver side are to be borne by the creditor. In a direct debit context, means that transaction charges on the sender side are to be borne by the creditor, transaction charges on the receiver side are to be borne by the debtor.
SLEV	FollowingServiceLevel	Charges are to be applied following the rules agreed in the service level and/or scheme.

**4.1.4.1.7 Agent <Agt>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Agent that takes the transaction charges or to which the transaction charges are due.

**Agent <Agt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 67 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		67
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		68

#### 4.1.4.1.8 Tax <Tax>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the tax applied to charges.

**Tax <Tax>** contains the following **TaxCharges2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		50
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		50
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	50

##### 4.1.4.1.8.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference to unambiguously identify the nature of the tax levied, such as Value Added Tax (VAT).

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 291

##### 4.1.4.1.8.2 Rate <Rate>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Rate used to calculate the tax.

*Datatype:* "[PercentageRate](#)" on page 288

##### 4.1.4.1.8.3 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money resulting from the calculation of the tax.

*Impacted by:* C2 "[ActiveOrHistoricCurrency](#)", C8 "[CurrencyAmount](#)"

*Datatype:* "[ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 267

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3)

contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.1.4.2 Charges6

*Definition:* Provides further details on the charges related to the payment transaction.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalChargesAndTaxAmount <TtlChrgsAndTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	51
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		51

##### 4.1.4.2.1 TotalChargesAndTaxAmount <TtlChrgsAndTaxAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total of all charges and taxes applied to the entry.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

##### 4.1.4.2.2 Record <Rcrd>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides details of the individual charges record.

**Record <Rcrd>** contains the following elements (see "[ChargesRecord3](#)" on page 47 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	47
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		48
	ChargeIncludedIndicator <ChrgInclInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		48
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			48
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		48
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		49
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		49
	Bearer  	[0..1]	CodeSet		49
	Agent <Agt>	[0..1]	±		49
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			50
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		50
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		50
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	50

## 4.1.5 Date Period

### 4.1.5.1 DatePeriod5

*Definition:* Range of time defined by a current value date and a requested value date.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CurrentValueDate <CurValDt>	[1..1]	Date		52
	RequestedValueDate <ReqdValDt>	[1..1]	Date		52

#### 4.1.5.1.1 CurrentValueDate <CurValDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* The underlying transaction or entry's current value date.

*Datatype:* "[ISODate](#)" on page 285

#### 4.1.5.1.2 RequestedValueDate <ReqdValDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* The underlying transaction or entry's requested value date.

*Datatype:* "[ISODate](#)" on page 285

### 4.1.5.2 DatePeriod2

*Definition:* Range of time defined by a start date and an end date.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		53
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		53

#### 4.1.5.2.1 FromDate <FrDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Start date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 285

#### 4.1.5.2.2 ToDate <ToDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* End date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 285

### 4.1.6 Date Time

#### 4.1.6.1 DateAndDateTime2Choice

*Definition:* Choice between a date or a date and time format.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		53
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		53

#### 4.1.6.1.1 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 285

#### 4.1.6.1.2 DateTime <DtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date and time.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 285

### 4.1.7 Direct Debit

#### 4.1.7.1 CreditTransferMandateData1

*Definition:* Provides further details related to a credit transfer mandate signed between the creditor and the debtor.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MandatIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		54
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		54
	DateOfSignature <DtOfSgntr>	[0..1]	Date		55
	DateOfVerification <DtOfVrctn>	[0..1]	DateTime		55
	ElectronicSignature <ElctrcnSgntr>	[0..1]	Binary		55
	FirstPaymentDate <FrstPmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		55
	FinalPaymentDate <FnIPmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		55
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	±		55
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			56
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		56
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		56

#### 4.1.7.1.1 MandatIdentification <MndtId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously identify the mandate.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.7.1.2 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of mandate, such as paper, electronic or scheme.

**Type <Tp>** contains the following elements (see "MandateTypeInformation2" on page 133 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			134
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		134
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		134
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			134
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		135
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		135
	CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>	[0..1]			135
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		135
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		135
	Classification <Clssfctn>	[0..1]	±		135

**4.1.7.1.3 DateOfSignature <DtOfSgntr>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date on which the credit transfer mandate has been signed by the debtor.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 285

**4.1.7.1.4 DateOfVerification <DtOfVrfctn>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date on which the credit transfer mandate has been verified.

*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 285

**4.1.7.1.5 ElectronicSignature <ElctrncSgntr>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Additional security provisions, such as a digital signature, as provided by the debtor.

*Datatype:* "Max10KBinary" on page 267

**4.1.7.1.6 FirstPaymentDate <FrstPmtDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date of the first payment of a recurrent credit transfer as per the mandate.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 285

**4.1.7.1.7 FinalPaymentDate <FnIPmtDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date of the final payment of a recurrent credit transfer as per the mandate.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 285

**4.1.7.1.8 Frequency <Frqcy>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Regularity with which credit transfer instructions are to be created and processed.

**Frequency <Frqcy>** contains one of the following elements (see "Frequency36Choice" on page 69 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		69
Or	Period <Prd>	[1..1]			70
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		70
	CountPerPeriod <CntPerPrd>	[1..1]	Quantity		70
Or}	PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]			71
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		71
	PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]	Text		71

**4.1.7.1.9 Reason <Rsn>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the setup of the credit transfer mandate.

Usage:

The reason will allow the user to distinguish between different mandates for the same creditor.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains one of the following **MandateSetupReason1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		56
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		56

**4.1.7.1.9.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the mandate setup, as published in an external reason code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalMandateSetupReason1Code" on page 278

**4.1.7.1.9.2 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the mandate setup, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 291

**4.1.8 Document****4.1.8.1 Document12**

*Definition:* Information about a document.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		57
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		57
	IssueDate <IsseDt>	[1..1]	±		57
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		58
	LanguageCode <LangCd>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C32	58
	Format <Frmt>	[1..1]			58
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		58
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		58
	FileName <FileNm>	[0..1]	Text		59
	DigitalSignature <DgtlSgntr>	[0..1]			59
	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		59
	Signature <Sgntr>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		59
	Enclosure <Nclsr>	[1..1]	Binary		60

#### 4.1.8.1.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of document or template.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DocumentType1Choice](#)" on page 60 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		60
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		60

#### 4.1.8.1.2 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the document or template.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 291

#### 4.1.8.1.3 IssueDate <IsseDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Issue date or date time of the document.

**IssueDate <IsseDt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 53 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		53
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		53

#### 4.1.8.1.4 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of document or transaction, for example, tax invoice.

*Datatype:* "[Max140Text](#)" on page 290

#### 4.1.8.1.5 LanguageCode <LangCd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identifier for a language used in the document.

*Impacted by:* [C32 "ValidationByTable"](#)

*Datatype:* "[LanguageCode](#)" on page 281

#### Constraints

- **ValidationByTable**

Must be a valid terrestrial language.

#### 4.1.8.1.6 Format <Frmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Format of the document or template, such as PDF, XML, XSLT.

**Format <Frmt>** contains one of the following **DocumentFormat1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		58
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		58

##### 4.1.8.1.6.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Document format.

*Datatype:* "[ExternalDocumentFormat1Code](#)" on page 274

##### 4.1.8.1.6.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Document format expressed as a proprietary code.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification1](#)" on page 73 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		73
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		73
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		73

#### 4.1.8.1.7 FileName <FileNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Technical name of the file.

*Datatype:* "[Max140Text](#)" on page 290

#### 4.1.8.1.8 DigitalSignature <DgtlSgntr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Digital signature of the enclosed binary file.

**DigitalSignature <DgtlSgntr>** contains the following **PartyAndSignature3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		59
	Signature <Sgntr>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		59

#### 4.1.8.1.8.1 Party <Pty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Entity involved in an activity.

**Party <Pty>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification135](#)" on page 175 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		175
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		175
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		176
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C7	176
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		177

#### 4.1.8.1.8.2 Signature <Sgntr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Signature of a party.

*Type:* (External Schema)

Specifies a data structure that allows to include any valid XML Structure (e.g. through an XML Schema). The property namespace is set to 'any'.

The processContents value is 'skip' which according to the above specification and to Iso20022: 2013 means that the application will not perform further validation processing.

#### 4.1.8.1.9 Enclosure <Nclsr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Binary file representing the enclosed document or template, such as a PDF file, image file, XML file, MT message.

*Datatype:* "Max10MbBinary" on page 268

#### 4.1.8.2 DocumentType1Choice

*Definition:* Choice of format for the document type.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		60
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		60

##### 4.1.8.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Document type, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalDocumentType1Code" on page 274

##### 4.1.8.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Document type, in a proprietary form.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification1" on page 73 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		73
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		73
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		73

#### 4.1.8.3 CreditorReferenceInformation2

*Definition:* Reference information provided by the creditor to allow the identification of the underlying documents.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			61
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			61
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		61
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		62
	Issuer </Issr>	[0..1]	Text		62
	Reference <Ref>	[0..1]	Text		62

#### 4.1.8.3.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of creditor reference.

**Type <Tp>** contains the following **CreditorReferenceType2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			61
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		61
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		62
	Issuer </Issr>	[0..1]	Text		62

##### 4.1.8.3.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Coded or proprietary format creditor reference type.

**CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>** contains one of the following **CreditorReferenceType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		61
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		62

##### 4.1.8.3.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of creditor reference, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "DocumentType3Code" on page 270

CodeName	Name	Definition
RADM	RemittanceAdviceMessage	Document is a remittance advice sent separately from the current transaction.
RPIN	RelatedPaymentInstruction	Document is a linked payment instruction to which the current payment

CodeName	Name	Definition
		instruction is related, for example, in a cover scenario.
FXDR	ForeignExchangeDealReference	Document is a pre-agreed or pre-arranged foreign exchange transaction to which the payment transaction refers.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
PUOR	PurchaseOrder	Document is a purchase order.
SCOR	StructuredCommunicationReference	Document is a structured communication reference provided by the creditor to identify the referred transaction.

#### 4.1.8.3.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Creditor reference type, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.8.3.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the credit reference type.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.8.3.2 Reference <Ref>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously refer to the payment transaction.

*Usage:* If available, the initiating party should provide this reference in the structured remittance information, to enable reconciliation by the creditor upon receipt of the amount of money.

If the business context requires the use of a creditor reference or a payment remit identification, and only one identifier can be passed through the end-to-end chain, the creditor's reference or payment remittance identification should be quoted in the end-to-end transaction identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

## 4.1.9 Financial Institution Identification

### 4.1.9.1 FinancialInstitutionIdentification18

*Definition:* Specifies the details to identify a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C6	63
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		63
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		63
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		63
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		64
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		64

#### 4.1.9.1.1 BICFI <BICFI>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Code allocated to a financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority as described in ISO 9362 "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

*Impacted by:* C6 "BICFI"

*Datatype:* "BICFIDec2014Identifier" on page 286

#### Constraints

- **BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

#### 4.1.9.1.2 ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Information used to identify a member within a clearing system.

**ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>** contains the following elements (see "ClearingSystemMemberIdentification2" on page 68 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]	±		68
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		69

#### 4.1.9.1.3 LEI <LEI>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Legal entity identifier of the financial institution.

*Datatype:* "LEIIdentifier" on page 287

#### 4.1.9.1.4 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name by which an agent is known and which is usually used to identify that agent.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 290

#### 4.1.9.1.5 PostalAddress <PstAdr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

**PostalAddress <PstAdr>** contains the following elements (see "PostalAddress24" on page 187 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			188
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		188
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		189
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		189
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		189
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		189
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		189
	BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		190
	PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		190
	Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		190
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		190
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		191
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C7	191
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		191

#### 4.1.9.1.6 Other <Othr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification of an agent, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

**Other <Othr>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericFinancialIdentification1](#)" on page 66 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		66
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			67
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		67
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		67
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		67

### 4.1.9.2 BranchData3

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific branch of a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		65
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		65
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		65
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		65

#### 4.1.9.2.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a branch of a financial institution.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 291

#### 4.1.9.2.2 LEI <LEI>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Legal entity identification for the branch of the financial institution.

*Datatype:* "[LEIIdentifier](#)" on page 287

#### 4.1.9.2.3 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name by which an agent is known and which is usually used to identify that agent.

*Datatype:* "[Max140Text](#)" on page 290

#### 4.1.9.2.4 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

**PostalAddress <PstIAdr>** contains the following elements (see "PostalAddress24" on page 187 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			188
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		188
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		189
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		189
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		189
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		189
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		189
	BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		190
	PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		190
	Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		190
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		190
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		191
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C7	191
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		191

#### 4.1.9.3 GenericFinancialIdentification1

*Definition:* Information related to an identification of a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		66
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			67
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		67
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		67
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		67

##### 4.1.9.3.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a person.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.9.3.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

**SchemeName <SchmeNm>** contains one of the following **FinancialIdentificationSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		67
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		67

##### 4.1.9.3.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentification1Code" on page 274

##### 4.1.9.3.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

##### 4.1.9.3.3 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.9.4 BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a financial institution or a branch of a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		67
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		68

##### 4.1.9.4.1 FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a financial institution, as assigned under an internationally recognised or proprietary identification scheme.

**FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>** contains the following elements (see "FinancialInstitutionIdentification18" on page 62 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C6	63
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		63
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		63
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		63
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		64
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		64

#### 4.1.9.4.2 BranchIdentification <BrnchId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies a specific branch of a financial institution.

*Usage:* This component should be used in case the identification information in the financial institution component does not provide identification up to branch level.

**BranchIdentification <BrnchId>** contains the following elements (see "BranchData3" on page 65 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		65
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		65
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		65
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		65

#### 4.1.9.5 ClearingSystemMemberIdentification2

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by a clearing system, to unambiguously identify a member of the clearing system.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]	±		68
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		69

##### 4.1.9.5.1 ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specification of a pre-agreed offering between clearing agents or the channel through which the payment instruction is processed.

**ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>** contains one of the following elements (see "ClearingSystemIdentification2Choice" on page 255 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		255
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		255

#### 4.1.9.5.2 MemberIdentification <Mmbld>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a member of a clearing system.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

## 4.1.10 Frequency

### 4.1.10.1 Frequency36Choice

*Definition:* Choice of format for a frequency, for example, the frequency of payment.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		69
Or	Period <Prd>	[1..1]			70
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		70
	CountPerPeriod <CntPerPrd>	[1..1]	Quantity		70
Or}	PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]			71
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		71
	PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]	Text		71

#### 4.1.10.1.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a frequency in terms of a specified period type.

*Datatype:* "Frequency6Code" on page 280

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.

CodeName	Name	Definition
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.

#### 4.1.10.1.2 Period <Prd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a frequency in terms of a count per period within a specified period type.

**Period <Prd>** contains the following **FrequencyPeriod1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		70
	CountPerPeriod <CntPerPrd>	[1..1]	Quantity		70

#### 4.1.10.1.2.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Period for which the number of instructions are to be created and processed.

*Datatype:* "Frequency6Code" on page 280

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.

#### 4.1.10.1.2.2 CountPerPeriod <CntPerPrd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Number of instructions to be created and processed during the specified period.

*Datatype:* "DecimalNumber" on page 287

### 4.1.10.1.3 PointInTime <PtInTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a frequency in terms of an exact point in time or moment within a specified period type.

**PointInTime <PtInTm>** contains the following **FrequencyAndMoment1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		71
	PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]	Text		71

#### 4.1.10.1.3.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Period for which the number of instructions are to be created and processed.

*Datatype:* "Frequency6Code" on page 280

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.

#### 4.1.10.1.3.2 PointInTime <PtInTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Further information on the exact point in time the event should take place.

*Datatype:* "Exact2NumericText" on page 289

## 4.1.11 Identification Information

### 4.1.11.1 GenericIdentification30

*Definition:* Information related to an identification, for example, party identification or account identification.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		72
	Issuer <Issr>	[1..1]	Text		72
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		72

#### 4.1.11.1.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary information, often a code, issued by the data source scheme issuer.

*Datatype:* "Exact4AlphaNumericText" on page 289

#### 4.1.11.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.11.1.3 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Short textual description of the scheme.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

### 4.1.11.2 GenericIdentification3

*Definition:* Information related to an identification, for example, party identification or account identification.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		72
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		72

#### 4.1.11.2.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name or number assigned by an entity to enable recognition of that entity, for example, account identifier.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.11.2.2 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

### 4.1.11.3 GenericIdentification1

*Definition:* Information related to an identification, for example party identification or account identification.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		73
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		73
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		73

#### 4.1.11.3.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification assigned by an institution.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.11.3.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.11.3.3 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

## 4.1.12 Investigation

### 4.1.12.1 InvestigationDataRecord7Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the data elements related to the response to an investigation request.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	DebitAuthorisation <DbtAuthstn>	[1..1]			76
	DebitAuthorisation <DbtAuthstn>	[1..1]	Indicator		76
	AmountToDebit <AmtToDbt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C9	77
	Account <Acct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	77
	ValueDateToDebit <ValDtToDbt>	[0..1]	Date		78
	CommonTransactionIdentification <CmonTxId>	[0..1]	Text		78
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		78
Or	Compensation <Compstn>	[1..1]			78
	Granted <Grantd>	[1..1]	Indicator		79
	InitialAmount <InitlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C9	79
	PaidCharges <PdChrgs>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C9	79
	AmountDue <AmtDue>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C9	80
	ExpectedValueDate <XpctdValDt>	[0..1]	Date		80
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		80
	InterestRate <IntrstRate>	[0..1]	Rate		81
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		81
Or	Valuation <Valtn>	[1..1]			81
	InitialAmount <InitlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C9	81
	DueCharges <DueChrgs>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C9	82
	AmountDue <AmtDue>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C9	82
	CompensationAgent <CompstnAgt>	[0..1]	±		82
	CompensationAccount <CompstnAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	83
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		83
	InterestRate <IntrstRate>	[0..1]	Rate		84
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		84
Or	Confirmation <Conf>	[1..1]			84
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	85
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		86
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[0..1]	Rate		86
	Account <Acct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	86

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BookingDate <BookgDt>	[0..1]	±		87
	ValueDate <ValDt>	[1..1]	±		87
	References <Refs>	[1..1]			87
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		88
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		88
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInflId>	[0..1]	Text		88
	InstructionIdentification <InstrId>	[0..1]	Text		89
	EndToEndIdentification <EndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		89
	UETR <UETR>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		89
	TransactionIdentification <TxId>	[0..1]	Text		89
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		89
	ChequeNumber <ChqNb>	[0..1]	Text		89
	ClearingSystemReference <ClrSysRef>	[0..1]	Text		90
	AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		90
	AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		90
	MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		90
	ProcessingIdentification <PrcgId>	[0..1]	Text		90
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			90
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		91
	Reference <Ref>	[1..1]	Text		91
	Charges <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		91
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		91
Or	TransactionStatus <TxSts>	[1..1]			91
	Status <Sts>	[1..1]			91
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		92
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		92
	StatusReasonInformation <StsRsnInf>	[0..*]	±	C28	92
Or	TransactionData <TxData>	[1..*]			92
	Path <Pth>	[0..1]	Text		93
	Record <Rcrd>	[1..1]			93

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		94
Or	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C9	94
Or	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet	C5	95
Or	BICFI <BICFI>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet	C6	95
Or	CashAccount <CshAcct>	[1..1]	±	C12, C11	95
Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	Text		96
Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		96
Or	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		96
Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		96
Or	Remittance <Rmt>	[1..1]			97
	Unstructured <Ustrd>	[0..*]	Text		97
	Structured <Strd>	[0..*]	±		97
	Related <Rltd>	[0..10]	±		99
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	Text		99
Or}	ResponseNarrative <RspnNrrtv>	[1..1]	Text		99

#### 4.1.12.1.1 DebitAuthorisation <DbtAuthstn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates if the debit authorisation is granted or not.

**DebitAuthorisation <DbtAuthstn>** contains the following **DebitAuthorisationConfirmation3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DebitAuthorisation <DbtAuthstn>	[1..1]	Indicator		76
	AmountToDebit <AmtToDbt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C9	77
	Account <Acct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	77
	ValueDateToDebit <ValDtToDbt>	[0..1]	Date		78
	CommonTransactionIdentification <CmonTxId>	[0..1]	Text		78
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		78

##### 4.1.12.1.1.1 DebitAuthorisation <DbtAuthstn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Code expressing the decision taken by the account owner relative to the request for debit authorisation.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "[TrueFalseIndicator](#)" on page 287):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 4.1.12.1.1.2 AmountToDebit <AmtToDbt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money authorised for debit.

*Usage:* The party approving the debit may want to authorise the amount less charges and may only be prepared to approve the debit for value today rather than the original value date.

*Impacted by:* [C1 "ActiveCurrency"](#), [C9 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* "[ActiveCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 266

#### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.1.12.1.1.3 Account <Acct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Account to which debit should be booked.

*Impacted by:* [C12 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule"](#), [C11 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"](#)

**Account <Acct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount40](#)" on page 40 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		40
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		40
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	41
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		41
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		41

**Constraints**

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
 /Identification Must be present  
 Or /Proxy Must be present

**4.1.12.1.1.4 ValueDateToDebit <ValDtToDbt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Value date for debiting the account.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 285

**4.1.12.1.1.5 CommonTransactionIdentification <CmonTxId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification (UTI) agreed upon by the two trade counterparties to identify the trade.

*Usage:* Only used by the Securities industry.

*Datatype:* "Max52Text" on page 291

**4.1.12.1.1.6 Reason <Rsn>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the debit authorisation response.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 290

**4.1.12.1.2 Compensation <Compstn>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates the compensation due for the request.

**Compensation <Compstn>** contains the following **CompensationResponse1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Granted <Grantd>	[1..1]	Indicator		79
	InitialAmount <InitIAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C9	79
	PaidCharges <PdChrgs>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C9	79
	AmountDue <AmtDue>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C9	80
	ExpectedValueDate <XpctdValDt>	[0..1]	Date		80
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		80
	InterestRate <IntrstRate>	[0..1]	Rate		81
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		81

#### 4.1.12.1.2.1 Granted <Grantd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Code expressing the decision taken relative to the request for compensation.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "[TrueFalseIndicator](#)" on page 287):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 4.1.12.1.2.2 InitialAmount <InitIAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Compensation calculated for the request before charges have been deducted.

*Impacted by:* [C1 "ActiveCurrency"](#), [C9 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 266

##### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.1.12.1.2.3 PaidCharges <PdChrgs>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Charges deducted from the initial amount.

*Impacted by:* [C1 "ActiveCurrency"](#), [C9 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 266

**Constraints**

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**4.1.12.1.2.4 AmountDue <AmtDue>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Compensation due for the request after charges have been deducted.

*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C9 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 266

**Constraints**

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**4.1.12.1.2.5 ExpectedValueDate <XpctdValDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Value date on which the compensation is expected to be paid.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 285

**4.1.12.1.2.6 Period <Prd>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date range for which the compensation applies.

**Period <Prd>** contains the following elements (see "DatePeriod2" on page 52 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		53
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		53

**4.1.12.1.2.7 InterestRate <IntrstRate>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Interest rate of a financial instrument used to calculate the compensation.

*Datatype:* "PercentageRate" on page 288

**4.1.12.1.2.8 Reason <Rsn>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the compensation response.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 290

**4.1.12.1.3 Valuation <Valtn>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates the compensation due for the request.

**Valuation <Valtn>** contains the following **AdjustmentCompensation1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InitialAmount <InitlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C9	81
	DueCharges <DueChrgs>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C9	82
	AmountDue <AmtDue>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C9	82
	CompensationAgent <CompstnAgt>	[0..1]	±		82
	CompensationAccount <CompstnAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	83
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		83
	InterestRate <IntrstRate>	[0..1]	Rate		84
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		84

**4.1.12.1.3.1 InitialAmount <InitlAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Compensation calculated for the request before charges have been added.

*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C9 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 266

**Constraints**

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.1.12.1.3.2 DueCharges <DueChrgs>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Charges added to the initial amount.

*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C9 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 266

##### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.1.12.1.3.3 AmountDue <AmtDue>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Compensation due for the request after charges have been added.

*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C9 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 266

##### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.1.12.1.3.4 CompensationAgent <CompstnAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Financial institution servicing an account for the party or agent to whom compensation is due.

**CompensationAgent <CompstnAgnt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 67 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		67
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		68

#### 4.1.12.1.3.5 CompensationAccount <CompstnAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Account to which compensation is due.

*Impacted by:* [C12 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule"](#), [C11 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"](#)

**CompensationAccount <CompstnAcct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount40](#)" on page 40 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		40
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		40
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	41
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		41
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		41

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
  /Identification Must be present
Or    /Proxy Must be present
```

#### 4.1.12.1.3.6 Period <Prd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date range for which the compensation applies.

**Period <Prd>** contains the following elements (see "[DatePeriod5](#)" on page 52 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CurrentValueDate <CurValDt>	[1..1]	Date		52
	RequestedValueDate <ReqdValDt>	[1..1]	Date		52

**4.1.12.1.3.7 InterestRate <IntrstRate>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Interest rate of a financial instrument used to calculate the compensation.

*Datatype:* "PercentageRate" on page 288

**4.1.12.1.3.8 Reason <Rsn>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the valuation response.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 290

**4.1.12.1.4 Confirmation <Conf>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides confirmation that a payment has debited or credited an account.

**Confirmation <Conf>** contains the following **BookingConfirmation5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	85
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		86
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[0..1]	Rate		86
	Account <Acct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	86
	BookingDate <BookgDt>	[0..1]	±		87
	ValueDate <ValDt>	[1..1]	±		87
	References <Refs>	[1..1]			87
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		88
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		88
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInflId>	[0..1]	Text		88
	InstructionIdentification <InstrId>	[0..1]	Text		89
	EndToEndIdentification <EndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		89
	UETR <UETR>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		89
	TransactionIdentification <TxId>	[0..1]	Text		89
	MandatIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		89
	ChequeNumber <ChqNb>	[0..1]	Text		89
	ClearingSystemReference <ClrSysRef>	[0..1]	Text		90
	AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		90
	AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		90
	MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		90
	ProcessingIdentification <PrcgId>	[0..1]	Text		90
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			90
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		91
	Reference <Ref>	[1..1]	Text		91
	Charges <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		91
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		91

#### 4.1.12.1.4.1 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money in the transaction or entry that has debited or credited an account.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.1.12.1.4.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the booking is a credit or a debit.

*Datatype:* "CreditDebitCode" on page 270

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

#### 4.1.12.1.4.3 ExchangeRate <XchgRate>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides information on the exchange rate used on the transaction or entry.

*Datatype:* "BaseOneRate" on page 288

#### 4.1.12.1.4.4 Account <Acct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Account that the transaction or entry has debited or credited.

*Impacted by:* C12 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C11 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**Account <Acct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 40 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		40
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		40
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	41
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		41
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		41

**Constraints**

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
 /Identification Must be present  
 Or /Proxy Must be present

**4.1.12.1.4.5 BookingDate <BookgDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time when an entry is posted to an account on the account servicer's books.

**BookingDate <BookgDt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 53 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		53
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		53

**4.1.12.1.4.6 ValueDate <ValDt>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which assets become available to the account owner in case of a credit entry, or cease to be available to the account owner in case of a debit entry.

**ValueDate <ValDt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 53 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		53
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		53

**4.1.12.1.4.7 References <Refs>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides identification of the transaction or entry. This can be used by the originator of the investigation to now locate the transaction or entry.

**References <Refs>** contains the following **TransactionReferences6** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <Msgld>	[0..1]	Text		88
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		88
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInfl>	[0..1]	Text		88
	InstructionIdentification <InstrId>	[0..1]	Text		89
	EndToEndIdentification <EndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		89
	UETR <UETR>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		89
	TransactionIdentification <TxId>	[0..1]	Text		89
	MandatIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		89
	ChequeNumber <ChqNb>	[0..1]	Text		89
	ClearingSystemReference <ClrSysRef>	[0..1]	Text		90
	AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		90
	AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		90
	MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		90
	ProcessingIdentification <PrctlId>	[0..1]	Text		90
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			90
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		91
	Reference <Ref>	[1..1]	Text		91

#### 4.1.12.1.4.7.1 MessageIdentification <Msgld>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party of the underlying message.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.12.1.4.7.2 AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference, as assigned by the account servicing institution, to unambiguously identify the instruction.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.12.1.4.7.3 PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInfl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by a sending party, to unambiguously identify the payment information group within the message.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.12.1.4.7.4 InstructionIdentification <InstrId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by an instructing party for an instructed party, to unambiguously identify the instruction.

*Usage:* The instruction identification is a point to point reference that can be used between the instructing party and the instructed party to refer to the individual instruction. It can be included in several messages related to the instruction.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.12.1.4.7.5 EndToEndIdentification <EndToEndId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the initiating party, to unambiguously identify the transaction. This identification is passed on, unchanged, throughout the entire end-to-end chain.

*Usage:* The end-to-end identification can be used for reconciliation or to link tasks relating to the transaction. It can be included in several messages related to the transaction.

*Usage:* In case there are technical limitations to pass on multiple references, the end-to-end identification must be passed on throughout the entire end-to-end chain.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.12.1.4.7.6 UETR <UETR>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Universally unique identifier to provide an end-to-end reference of a payment transaction.

*Datatype:* "UUIDv4Identifier" on page 287

**4.1.12.1.4.7.7 TransactionIdentification <TxId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the first instructing agent, to unambiguously identify the transaction that is passed on, unchanged, throughout the entire interbank chain.

*Usage:* The transaction identification can be used for reconciliation, tracking or to link tasks relating to the transaction on the interbank level.

*Usage:* The instructing agent has to make sure that the transaction identification is unique for a pre-agreed period.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.12.1.4.7.8 MandateIdentification <MndtId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously identify the mandate.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.12.1.4.7.9 ChequeNumber <ChqNb>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identifier for a cheque as assigned by the agent.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.12.1.4.7.10 ClearingSystemReference <ClrSysRef>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference, as assigned by a clearing system, to unambiguously identify the instruction.

*Usage:* In case there are technical limitations to pass on multiple references, the end-to-end identification must be passed on throughout the entire end-to-end chain.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.12.1.4.7.11 AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the securities transaction as known by the securities account owner (or the instructing party managing the account).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.12.1.4.7.12 AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the securities transaction as known by the securities account servicer.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.12.1.4.7.13 MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a securities transaction assigned by a market infrastructure other than a central securities depository, for example, Target2-Securities.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.12.1.4.7.14 ProcessingIdentification <PrcgId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the securities transaction assigned by the processor of the instruction other than the securities account owner, the securities account servicer and the market infrastructure.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.12.1.4.7.15 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Proprietary reference related to the underlying transaction.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following **ProprietaryReference1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		91
	Reference <Ref>	[1..1]	Text		91

**4.1.12.1.4.7.15.1 Type <Tp>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Identifies the type of reference reported.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291**4.1.12.1.4.7.15.2 Reference <Ref>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Proprietary reference specification related to the underlying transaction.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291**4.1.12.1.4.8 Charges <Chrgs>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Provides information on the charges relating to the transaction or entry.**Charges <Chrgs>** contains the following elements (see "Charges6" on page 51 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalChargesAndTaxAmount <TtChrgsAndTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	51
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		51

**4.1.12.1.4.9 Reason <Rsn>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the confirmation response.*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 290**4.1.12.1.5 TransactionStatus <TxSts>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Provides the status of a payment that has not yet debited or credited an account.**TransactionStatus <TxSts>** contains the following **PaymentTransactionStatus1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Status <Sts>	[1..1]			91
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		92
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		92
	StatusReasonInformation <StsRsnInf>	[0..*]	±	C28	92

**4.1.12.1.5.1 Status <Sts>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Status of a transaction.

**Status <Sts>** contains one of the following **TransactionStatus1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		92
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		92

**4.1.12.1.5.1.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the status of a transaction, as published in an external payment transaction status code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalPaymentTransactionStatus1Code" on page 278

**4.1.12.1.5.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the status of a transaction, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.12.1.5.2 StatusReasonInformation <StsRsnInf>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides detailed information on the status reason.

*Impacted by:* C28 "StatusReasonRule"

**StatusReasonInformation <StsRsnInf>** contains the following elements (see "StatusReasonInformation12" on page 251 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Originator <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		252
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			252
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		252
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		252
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		253

**Constraints**

- **StatusReasonRule**

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AdditionalInformation must be present.

```

On Condition
  /Reason/Code is within DataType <<Code>> ValidationRuleNarrative1Code
And    /Reason is present
And    /Reason/Code is present
Following Must be True
  /AdditionalInformation[1] Must be present
    
```

**4.1.12.1.6 TransactionData <TxData>**

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Provides data related to a request.

**TransactionData <TxData>** contains the following **TransactionAmendment1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Path <Pth>	[0..1]	Text		93
	Record <Rcrd>	[1..1]			93
{Or	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		94
Or	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C9	94
Or	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet	C5	95
Or	BICFI <BICFI>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet	C6	95
Or	CashAccount <CshAcct>	[1..1]	±	C12, C11	95
Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	Text		96
Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		96
Or	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		96
Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		96
Or	Remittance <Rmt>	[1..1]			97
	Unstructured <Ustrd>	[0..*]	Text		97
	Structured <Strd>	[0..*]	±		97
	Related <Rltd>	[0..10]	±		99
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	Text		99

#### 4.1.12.1.6.1 Path <Pth>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Absolute path of an element.

*Datatype:* "Max2048Text" on page 290

#### 4.1.12.1.6.2 Record <Rcrd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the individual record of the data elements.

**Record <Rcrd>** contains one of the following **TransactionAmendment1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		94
Or	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C9	94
Or	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet	C5	95
Or	BICFI <BICFI>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet	C6	95
Or	CashAccount <CshAcct>	[1..1]	±	C12, C11	95
Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	Text		96
Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		96
Or	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		96
Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		96
Or	Remittance <Rmt>	[1..1]			97
	Unstructured <Ustrd>	[0..*]	Text		97
	Structured <Strd>	[0..*]	±		97
	Related <Rltd>	[0..10]	±		99
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	Text		99

#### 4.1.12.1.6.2.1 Agent <Agt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the data of an agent that was requested.

**Agent <Agt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 67 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		67
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		68

#### 4.1.12.1.6.2.2 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies details on an amount that was requested.

*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C9 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 266

**Constraints**

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**4.1.12.1.6.2.3 AnyBIC <AnyBIC>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies details on a business identifier code that was requested.

*Impacted by:* C5 "AnyBIC"

*Datatype:* "AnyBICDec2014Identifier" on page 286

**Constraints**

- **AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**4.1.12.1.6.2.4 BICFI <BICFI>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies details on a financial institution business identifier code that was requested.

*Impacted by:* C6 "BICFI"

*Datatype:* "BICFIDec2014Identifier" on page 286

**Constraints**

- **BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**4.1.12.1.6.2.5 CashAccount <CshAcct>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies details on a cash account that was requested.

*Impacted by:* C12 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C11 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**CashAccount <CshAcct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount40](#)" on page 40 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		40
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		40
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	41
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		41
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		41

### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
 /Identification Must be present  
 Or /Proxy Must be present

#### 4.1.12.1.6.2.6 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies details on a code that was requested.

*Datatype:* "[Max4Text](#)" on page 291

#### 4.1.12.1.6.2.7 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies details of a date that was requested.

*Datatype:* "[ISODate](#)" on page 285

#### 4.1.12.1.6.2.8 DateTime <DtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies details on a date and time that was requested.

*Datatype:* "[ISODatetime](#)" on page 285

#### 4.1.12.1.6.2.9 Party <Pty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies details on the data of a party that was requested.

**Party <Pty>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification135](#)" on page 175 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		175
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		175
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		176
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C7	176
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		177

#### 4.1.12.1.6.2.10 Remittance <Rmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies details on the data of a remittance that was requested.

**Remittance <Rmt>** contains the following **Remittance1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Unstructured <Ustrd>	[0..*]	Text		97
	Structured <Strd>	[0..*]	±		97
	Related <Rltd>	[0..10]	±		99

##### 4.1.12.1.6.2.10.1 Unstructured <Ustrd>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system, in an unstructured form.

*Datatype:* "[Max140Text](#)" on page 290

##### 4.1.12.1.6.2.10.2 Structured <Strd>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system, in a structured form.

**Structured <Strd>** contains the following elements (see "[StructuredRemittanceInformation16](#)" on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInf>	[0..*]			200
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			202
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			202
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		202
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		203
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		203
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		203
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		204
	LineDetails <LineDtls>	[0..*]			204
	Identification <Id>	[1..*]			205
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			206
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			206
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		206
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		206
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		207
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		207
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		207
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		207
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]			207
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	208
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			209
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			209
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		209
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		209
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	209
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	210
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			210
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			210
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		211
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		211

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	211
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			211
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	212
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		212
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		212
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		212
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	213
	ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt>	[0..1]	±		213
	CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtrRefInf>	[0..1]	±		214
	Invoicer <Invcr>	[0..1]	±		215
	Invoicee <Invcee>	[0..1]	±		215
	TaxRemittance <TaxRmt>	[0..1]	±		216
	GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt>	[0..1]	±		216
	AdditionalRemittanceInformation <AddtlRmtInf>	[0..3]	Text		217

#### 4.1.12.1.6.2.10.3 Related <Rltd>

*Presence:* [0..10]

*Definition:* Provides information related to the handling of the remittance information by any of the agents in the transaction processing chain.

**Related <Rltd>** contains the following elements (see "[RemittanceLocation7](#)" on page 248 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	RemittanceIdentification <RmtdId>	[0..1]	Text		248
	RemittanceLocationDetails <RmtLctnDtls>	[0..*]	±		248

#### 4.1.12.1.6.2.11 Other <Othr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies other data related to the investigation that was requested.

*Datatype:* "[Max140Text](#)" on page 290

#### 4.1.12.1.7 ResponseNarrative <RspnNrrtv>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides additional information about the response in narrative form.

*Datatype:* "[Max500Text](#)" on page 291

### 4.1.12.2 AdditionalRequestData1Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the data elements related to additional data for the investigation request.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	RequestedDebitAuthorisation <ReqdDbtAuthstn>	[1..1]			100
	CancellationReason <CxIRsn>	[1..1]	±		101
	AmountToDebit <AmtToDbt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	101
	Account <Acct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	101
	ValueDateToDebit <ValDtToDbt>	[0..1]	Date		102
	AdditionalCancellationReasonInformation <AddtlCxIRsnInf>	[0..*]	Text		102
Or	RequestedCompensation <ReqdCompstn>	[1..1]			102
	CompensationAccount <CompstnAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	102
	Period <Prd>	[1..1]	±		103
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C9	103
	ExpectedValueDate <XpctdValDt>	[0..1]	Date		104
	InterestRate <IntrstRate>	[0..1]	Rate		104
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..*]	Text		104
Or	RequestedValuation <ReqdValtn>	[1..1]			104
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		104
Or}	RequestNarrative <ReqNrrtv>	[1..1]	Text		104

#### 4.1.12.2.1 RequestedDebitAuthorisation <ReqdDbtAuthstn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Detailed information about the request.

**RequestedDebitAuthorisation <ReqdDbtAuthstn>** contains the following **DebitAuthorisation3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CancellationReason <CxIRsn>	[1..1]	±		101
	AmountToDebit <AmtToDbt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	101
	Account <Acct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	101
	ValueDateToDebit <ValDtToDbt>	[0..1]	Date		102
	AdditionalCancellationReasonInformation <AddtlCxIRsnInf>	[0..*]	Text		102

**4.1.12.2.1.1 CancellationReason <CxIRsn>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the cancellation request.

**CancellationReason <CxIRsn>** contains one of the following elements (see "[CancellationReason33Choice](#)" on page 254 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		254
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		254

**4.1.12.2.1.2 AmountToDebit <AmtToDbt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money requested for debit authorisation.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C8 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 267

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**4.1.12.2.1.3 Account <Acct>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Account requested to debit.

*Impacted by:* [C12 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule"](#), [C11 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"](#)

**Account <Acct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount40](#)" on page 40 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		40
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		40
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	41
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		41
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		41

**Constraints**

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
 /Identification Must be present  
 Or /Proxy Must be present

**4.1.12.2.1.4 ValueDateToDebit <ValDtToDbt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Value date for debiting the amount.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 285

**4.1.12.2.1.5 AdditionalCancellationReasonInformation <AddtlCxlRsnInf>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Further details on the cancellation reason.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 290

**4.1.12.2.2 RequestedCompensation <ReqdCompstn>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Detailed information about the request.

**RequestedCompensation <ReqdCompstn>** contains the following **CompensationRequest1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CompensationAccount <CompstnAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	102
	Period <Prd>	[1..1]	±		103
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C9	103
	ExpectedValueDate <XpctdValDt>	[0..1]	Date		104
	InterestRate <IntrstRate>	[0..1]	Rate		104
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..*]	Text		104

**4.1.12.2.2.1 CompensationAccount <CompstnAcct>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Account to which compensation is due.

*Impacted by:* C12 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C11 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**CompensationAccount <CompstnAcct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount40](#)" on page 40 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		40
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		40
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	41
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		41
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		41

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
 /Identification Must be present  
 Or /Proxy Must be present

#### 4.1.12.2.2.2 Period <Prd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date range for which the compensation applies.

**Period <Prd>** contains the following elements (see "[DatePeriod2](#)" on page 52 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		53
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		53

#### 4.1.12.2.2.3 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Estimated compensation due for the request as calculated by the requestor.

*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C9 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "[ActiveCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 266

#### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217

Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.1.12.2.2.4 ExpectedValueDate <XpctdValDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Value date on which the compensation is requested to be paid.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 285

#### 4.1.12.2.2.5 InterestRate <IntrstRate>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Interest rate of a financial instrument used to estimate the compensation.

*Datatype:* "PercentageRate" on page 288

#### 4.1.12.2.2.6 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the compensation.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 290

#### 4.1.12.2.3 RequestedValuation <ReqdValtn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Detailed information about the request.

**RequestedValuation <ReqdValtn>** contains the following **AdjustmentRequest1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		104

#### 4.1.12.2.3.1 Period <Prd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the underlying transaction or entry's current value date and requested value date.

**Period <Prd>** contains the following elements (see "DatePeriod5" on page 52 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CurrentValueDate <CurValDt>	[1..1]	Date		52
	RequestedValueDate <ReqdValDt>	[1..1]	Date		52

#### 4.1.12.2.4 RequestNarrative <ReqNrrtv>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides additional information about the request in narrative form.

*Datatype:* "Max500Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.12.3 InvestigationReasonSubType1Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the reason code sub type of an investigation.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		105
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		105

##### 4.1.12.3.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason sub type, as published in the external investigation reason sub type code set.

*Datatype:* "ExternalInvestigationReasonSubType1Code" on page 276

##### 4.1.12.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason sub type, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.12.4 FileData1

*Definition:* Provides information on a file that is being sent separately to the message.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		105
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		106
	IssueDate <IsseDt>	[0..1]	±		106
	Format <Frmt>	[0..1]			106
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		106
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		106
	FileName <FileNm>	[0..1]	Text		107
	NetworkReference <NtwkRef>	[0..1]	Text		107
	FileLocationElectronicAddress <FileLctnElctrcAdr>	[0..1]	Text		107

##### 4.1.12.4.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Type of document or template.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DocumentType1Choice](#)" on page 60 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		60
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		60

#### 4.1.12.4.2 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the document or template.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 291

#### 4.1.12.4.3 IssueDate <IsseDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Issue date or date time of the document.

**IssueDate <IsseDt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 53 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		53
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		53

#### 4.1.12.4.4 Format <Frmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Format of the document or template, such as PDF, XML, XSLT.

**Format <Frmt>** contains one of the following **DocumentFormat1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		106
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		106

##### 4.1.12.4.4.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Document format.

*Datatype:* "[ExternalDocumentFormat1Code](#)" on page 274

##### 4.1.12.4.4.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Document format expressed as a proprietary code.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification1](#)" on page 73 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		73
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		73
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		73

#### 4.1.12.4.5 FileName <FileNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Technical name of the file.

*Datatype:* "[Max140Text](#)" on page 290

#### 4.1.12.4.6 NetworkReference <NtwkRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Contains the reference assigned by the network.

*Datatype:* "[Max140Text](#)" on page 290

#### 4.1.12.4.7 FileLocationElectronicAddress <FileLctnElctrncAdr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Electronic address to which a party has sent the file.

*Datatype:* "[Max2048Text](#)" on page 290

#### 4.1.12.5 InvestigationSubType1Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the sub type of an investigation.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		107
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		107

##### 4.1.12.5.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Investigation sub type, as published in an external investigation sub type code set.

*Datatype:* "[ExternalInvestigationSubType1Code](#)" on page 277

##### 4.1.12.5.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Investigation sub type, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 291

#### 4.1.12.6 UnderlyingStatementEntry5

*Definition:* Provides further details on the underlying statement entry to which the investigation message refers.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalAccount <OrgnlAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	108
	OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnlGrpInf>	[0..1]	±		109
	OriginalStatementIdentification <OrgnlStmntId>	[0..1]	Text		109
	OriginalEntryReference <OrgnlNtryRef>	[0..1]	Text		109
	OriginalUETR <OrgnlUETR>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		109
	OriginalEntryAmount <OrgnlNtryAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	109
	OriginalEntryValueDate <OrgnlNtryValDt>	[0..1]	±		110

#### Constraints

- **OriginalStatementIdentificationOrEntryReferencePresenceRule**

OriginalStatementIdentification or OriginalEntryReference must be present, both may be present.

Following Must be True

/OriginalStatementIdentification Must be present

Or /OriginalEntryReference Must be present

##### 4.1.12.6.1 OriginalAccount <OrgnlAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details of the account, for which the original statement was generated.

*Impacted by:* C12 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C11 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**OriginalAccount <OrgnlAcct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 40 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		40
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		40
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	41
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		41
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		41

**Constraints**

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
 /Identification Must be present  
 Or /Proxy Must be present

**4.1.12.6.2 OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnlGrpInf>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides information on the original message.

**OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnlGrpInf>** contains the following elements (see "OriginalGroupInformation29" on page 171 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgId>	[1..1]	Text		171
	OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		172
	OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		172

**4.1.12.6.3 OriginalStatementIdentification <OrgnlStmtId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the account servicer, to unambiguously identify the original statement.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.12.6.4 OriginalEntryReference <OrgnlNtryRef>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Original unique reference, as assigned by the account servicer, to unambiguously identify the original entry.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.12.6.5 OriginalUETR <OrgnlUETR>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Universally unique identifier to provide the original end-to-end reference of a payment transaction.

*Datatype:* "UUIDv4Identifier" on page 287

**4.1.12.6.6 OriginalEntryAmount <OrgnlNtryAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money in the cash entry.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C8 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 267

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.1.12.6.7 OriginalEntryValueDate <OrgnINtryValDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which assets become available to the account owner in case of a credit entry, or cease to be available to the account owner in case of a debit entry.

Usage: If entry status is pending and value date is present, then the value date refers to an expected/ requested value date.

For entries subject to availability/float and for which availability information is provided, the value date must not be used. In this case the availability component identifies the number of availability days.

**OriginalEntryValueDate <OrgnINtryValDt>** contains one of the following elements (see ["DateAndDateTime2Choice"](#) on page 53 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		53
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		53

#### 4.1.12.7 UnderlyingInvestigationInstrument1Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the type of instrument or product that the investigation relates to.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		110
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		111

##### 4.1.12.7.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Underlying instrument or product, as published in an external underlying investigation instrument code set.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalInvestigationInstrument1Code" on page 275](#)

#### 4.1.12.7.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Underlying instrument or product, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 291](#)

#### 4.1.12.8 InvestigationServiceLevel1Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the service level of an investigation.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		111
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		111

##### 4.1.12.8.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Investigation service level, as published in an external investigation service level code set.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalInvestigationServiceLevel1Code" on page 276](#)

##### 4.1.12.8.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Investigation service level, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 291](#)

#### 4.1.12.9 InvestigationRequestAction1

*Definition:* Specifies the type of action requested and reason for action.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Action <Actn>	[1..1]			112
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		112
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		112
	ActionReason <ActnRsn>	[0..1]	±	C28	112

#### Constraints

- **ObjectionActionReasonRule**

If Action/Code is equal to RQOB for Request Objection, ActionReason must be present.

On Condition

```

/Action/Code is within DataType <<Code>> ValidationRuleRequestObjection1Code
And /Action is present
And /Action/Code is present

```

Following Must be True  
/ActionReason Must be present

- **ObjectionActionRule**

External code RQOB for Request Objection can only be populated in Action/Code when Requestor has already received a response from the Responder.

#### 4.1.12.9.1 Action <Actn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of action requested.

**Action <Actn>** contains one of the following **InvestigationRequestAction1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		112
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		112

##### 4.1.12.9.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Action requested, as published in an external investigation action code set.

*Datatype:* "ExternalInvestigationAction1Code" on page 275

##### 4.1.12.9.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Action requested, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.12.9.2 ActionReason <ActnRsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides detailed information on the action reason.

*Impacted by:* C28 "StatusReasonRule"

**ActionReason <ActnRsn>** contains the following elements (see "InvestigationActionReason1" on page 253 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Originator <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		253
	Reason <Rsn>	[1..1]			254
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		254
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		254
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		254

**Constraints**

- **StatusReasonRule**

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AdditionalInformation must be present.

On Condition

/Reason/Code is within DataType <<Code>> ValidationRuleNarrative1Code

And /Reason is present

And /Reason/Code is present

Following Must be True

/AdditionalInformation[1] Must be present

**4.1.12.10 RelatedInvestigationData1**

*Definition:* Provides information on data related to the investigation that is being sent separately to the message.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InvestigationIdentification <Invstgtnd>	[0..1]	Text		113
	Location <Lctn>	[0..*]			113
	Method <Mtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	ElectronicAddress <ElctrcAdr>	[0..1]	Text		114
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]			114
	Name <Nm>	[1..1]	Text		114
	Address <Adr>	[1..1]	±		115

**4.1.12.10.1 InvestigationIdentification <Invstgtnd>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification to unambiguously identify data or documentation sent separately from the request or response, such as a copy of a passport.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.12.10.2 Location <Lctn>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides information on the location and/or delivery of the related investigation data or documentation.

**Location <Lctn>** contains the following **InvestigationLocationData1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Method <Mtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	ElectronicAddress <ElctrcAdr>	[0..1]	Text		114
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]			114
	Name <Nm>	[1..1]	Text		114
	Address <Adr>	[1..1]	±		115

**4.1.12.10.2.1 Method <Mtd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Method used to deliver the data or documentation.

*Datatype:* "InvestigationLocationMethod1Code" on page 281

CodeName	Name	Definition
EDIC	ElectronicDataInterchange	Investigation related data must be sent through Electronic Data Interchange (EDI).
EMAL	EMail	Investigation related data must be sent through e-mail.
FAXI	Fax	Investigation related data must be faxed.
POST	Post	Investigation related data must be sent through postal services.
SMSM	SMS	Investigation related data must be sent through by phone as a short message service (SMS).
URID	UniformResourceIdentifier	Investigation related data needs to be sent to a Uniform Resource Identifier (URI). URI is a compact string of characters that uniquely identify an abstract or physical resource. URI's are the super-set of identifiers, such as URLs, email addresses, ftp sites, etc, and as such, provide the syntax for all of the identification schemes.

**4.1.12.10.2.2 ElectronicAddress <ElctrncAdr>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Electronic address to which an agent has sent the data or documentation.

*Datatype:* "Max2048Text" on page 290

**4.1.12.10.2.3 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Postal address to which an agent has sent the data or documentation.

**PostalAddress <PstlAdr>** contains the following **NameAndAddress16** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[1..1]	Text		114
	Address <Adr>	[1..1]	±		115

**4.1.12.10.2.3.1 Name <Nm>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name by which a party is known and is usually used to identify that party.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 290

**4.1.12.10.2.3.2 Address <Adr>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Postal address of a party.**Address <Adr>** contains the following elements (see "[PostalAddress24](#)" on page 187 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			188
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		188
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		189
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		189
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		189
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		189
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		189
	BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		190
	PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		190
	Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		190
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		190
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		191
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C7	191
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		191

**4.1.12.11 UnderlyingData2Choice***Definition:* Specifies the details of an underlying transaction, on which the investigation is processed.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Initiation <Initn>	[1..1]		C19, C21	117
	OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnlGrpInf>	[0..1]			118
	OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgId>	[1..1]	Text		118
	OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		118
	OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		118
	OriginalMessageDeliveryChannel <OrgnlMsgDlvryChanl>	[0..1]	Text		119
	OriginalPaymentInformationIdentification <OrgnlPmtInfId>	[0..1]	Text		119
	OriginalInstructionIdentification <OrgnlInstrId>	[0..1]	Text		119
	OriginalEndToEndIdentification <OrgnlEndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		119
	OriginalUETR <OrgnlUETR>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		119
	OriginalInstructedAmount <OrgnlInstdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	119
	RequestedExecutionDate <ReqdExctnDt>	[0..1]	±		120
	RequestedCollectionDate <ReqdColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		120
	OriginalTransactionReference <OrgnlTxRef>	[0..1]	±		120
	OriginalServiceLevel <OrgnlSvcLvl>	[0..1]			123
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		123
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		123
Or	Interbank <IntrBk>	[1..1]		C20	123
	OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnlGrpInf>	[0..1]			124
	OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgId>	[1..1]	Text		125
	OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		125
	OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		125
	OriginalMessageDeliveryChannel <OrgnlMsgDlvryChanl>	[0..1]	Text		125
	OriginalInstructionIdentification <OrgnlInstrId>	[0..1]	Text		125
	OriginalEndToEndIdentification <OrgnlEndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		125
	OriginalTransactionIdentification <OrgnlTxId>	[0..1]	Text		126
	OriginalUETR <OrgnlUETR>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		126
	OriginalInterbankSettlementAmount <OrgnlIntrBkSttlmAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	126
	OriginalInterbankSettlementDate <OrgnlIntrBkSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		126

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalTransactionReference <OrgnITxRef>	[0..1]	±		126
	OriginalServiceLevel <OrgnSvcLvl>	[0..1]			129
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		129
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		129
Or	StatementEntry <StmntNtry>	[1..1]	±	C22	129
Or	Account <Acct>	[1..1]	±	C12, C11	130
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	±		131

#### 4.1.12.11.1 Initiation <Initn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reference details on the original payment initiation.

*Impacted by:* C19 "OriginalIdentificationRule", C21 "OriginalRequestedDateRule"

**Initiation <Initn>** contains the following **UnderlyingPaymentInstruction8** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnGrpInf>	[0..1]			118
	OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnMsgId>	[1..1]	Text		118
	OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnMsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		118
	OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnCreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		118
	OriginalMessageDeliveryChannel <OrgnMsgDlvryChan>	[0..1]	Text		119
	OriginalPaymentInformationIdentification <OrgnPmtInfId>	[0..1]	Text		119
	OriginalInstructionIdentification <OrgnInstrId>	[0..1]	Text		119
	OriginalEndToEndIdentification <OrgnEndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		119
	OriginalUETR <OrgnUETR>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		119
	OriginalInstructedAmount <OrgnInstdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	119
	RequestedExecutionDate <ReqdExctnDt>	[0..1]	±		120
	RequestedCollectionDate <ReqdColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		120
	OriginalTransactionReference <OrgnITxRef>	[0..1]	±		120
	OriginalServiceLevel <OrgnSvcLvl>	[0..1]			123
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		123
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		123

**Constraints**

- **OriginalIdentificationRule**

Either OriginalInstructionIdentification, OriginalEndToEndIdentification or OriginalUETR must be present.

Following Must be True

- /OriginalInstructionIdentification Must be present
- Or /OriginalEndToEndIdentification Must be present
- Or /OriginalUETR Must be present

- **OriginalRequestedDateRule**

Either RequestedExecutionDate or RequestedCollectionDate must be present.

Following Must be True

- /RequestedExecutionDate Must be present
- Or /RequestedCollectionDate Must be present

**4.1.12.11.1.1 OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnlGrpInf>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide information on the original message.

**OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnlGrpInf>** contains the following **UnderlyingGroupInformation1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgId>	[1..1]	Text		118
	OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		118
	OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		118
	OriginalMessageDeliveryChannel <OrgnlMsgDivryChanI>	[0..1]	Text		119

**4.1.12.11.1.1.1 OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgId>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the original instructing party, to unambiguously identify the original message.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.12.11.1.1.2 OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmId>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the original message name identifier to which the message refers.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.12.11.1.1.3 OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the original message was created.

*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 285

**4.1.12.11.1.1.4 OriginalMessageDeliveryChannel <OrgnIMsgDlvryChanI>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Original channel used for the delivery of the message, to allow the receiver of the request to locate the payment with greater ease.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.12.11.1.2 OriginalPaymentInformationIdentification <OrgnPmtInflId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the original sending party, to unambiguously identify the original payment information group.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.12.11.1.3 OriginalInstructionIdentification <OrgnInstrId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the original instructing party for the original instructed party, to unambiguously identify the original instruction.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.12.11.1.4 OriginalEndToEndIdentification <OrgnEndToEndId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the original initiating party, to unambiguously identify the original transaction.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.12.11.1.5 OriginalUETR <OrgnUETR>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Universally unique identifier to provide the original end-to-end reference of a payment transaction.

*Datatype:* "UUIDv4Identifier" on page 287

**4.1.12.11.1.6 OriginalInstructedAmount <OrgnInstdAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money, as provided in the original transaction, to be moved between the debtor and the creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency, as ordered by the original initiating party.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3)

contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.1.12.11.1.7 RequestedExecutionDate <ReqdExctnDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date at which the initiating party requests the clearing agent to process the payment.

*Usage:* This is the date on which the debtor's account is to be debited. If payment by cheque, the date when the cheque must be generated by the bank.

**RequestedExecutionDate <ReqdExctnDt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 53 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		53
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		53

#### 4.1.12.11.1.8 RequestedCollectionDate <ReqdColltnDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date at which the creditor requests the amount of money to be collected from the debtor.

*Datatype:* "[ISODate](#)" on page 285

#### 4.1.12.11.1.9 OriginalTransactionReference <OrgnlTxRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Key elements used to identify the original transaction that is being referred to.

**OriginalTransactionReference <OrgnITxRef>** contains the following elements (see "OriginalTransactionReference35" on page 141 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InterbankSettlementAmount <IntrBkSttlmAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	144
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	±		144
	InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		145
	RequestedCollectionDate <ReqdColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		145
	RequestedExecutionDate <ReqdExctnDt>	[0..1]	±		145
	CreditorSchemeldentification <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		145
	SettlementInformation <SttlmInf>	[0..1]		C13, C14, C24, C25, C26, C27, C30, C31	145
	SettlementMethod <SttlmMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		147
	SettlementAccount <SttlmAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	148
	ClearingSystem <ClrSys>	[0..1]			148
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		149
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		149
	InstructingReimbursementAgent <InstgRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		149
	InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount <InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	149
	InstructedReimbursementAgent <InstdRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		150
	InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount <InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	150
	ThirdReimbursementAgent <ThrdRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		151
	ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount <ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	151
	PaymentTypeInfoInformation <PmtTplnf>	[0..1]	±		152
	PaymentMethod <PmtMtd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		153
	MandateRelatedInformation <MndtRltdInf>	[0..1]			153
{Or	DirectDebitMandate <DrctDbtMndt>	[0..1]		C3, C4	155
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		157
	DateOfSignature <DtOfSgntr>	[0..1]	Date		157
	AmendmentIndicator <AmdmntInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		157

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AmendmentInformationDetails <AmdmntInfDtls>	[0..1]			157
	OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtld>	[0..1]	Text		158
	OriginalCreditorSchemeldentification <OrgnlCdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		158
	OriginalCreditorAgent <OrgnlCdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		159
	OriginalCreditorAgentAccount <OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	159
	OriginalDebtor <OrgnlDbtr>	[0..1]	±		160
	OriginalDebtorAccount <OrgnlDbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	160
	OriginalDebtorAgent <OrgnlDbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		161
	OriginalDebtorAgentAccount <OrgnlDbtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	161
	OriginalFinalCollectionDate <OrgnlFnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		162
	OriginalFrequency <OrgnlFrqcy>	[0..1]	±		162
	OriginalReason <OrgnlRsn>	[0..1]			162
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		163
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		163
	OriginalTrackingDays <OrgnlTrckgDays>	[0..1]	Text		163
	ElectronicSignature <ElctrcSgntr>	[0..1]	Text		163
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		163
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		163
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	±		163
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			164
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		164
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		164
	TrackingDays <TrckgDays>	[0..1]	Text		164
Or}	CreditTransferMandate <CdtTrfMndt>	[0..1]	±		164
	RemittanceInformation <RmtInf>	[0..1]	±		165
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		165
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		165
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	166
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		166

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DebtorAgentAccount <DbtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	167
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		167
	CreditorAgentAccount <CdtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	168
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		168
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	169
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		169
	Purpose <Purp>	[0..1]	±		170

#### 4.1.12.11.1.10 OriginalServiceLevel <OrgnlSvcLvl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agreement under which or rules under which the transaction should be processed.

**OriginalServiceLevel <OrgnlSvcLvl>** contains one of the following **ServiceLevel8Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		123
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		123

##### 4.1.12.11.1.10.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as published in an external service level code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalServiceLevel1Code" on page 279

##### 4.1.12.11.1.10.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as a proprietary code.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.12.11.2 Interbank <IntrBk>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reference details on the original interbank payment transaction.

*Impacted by:* C20 "OriginalIdentificationRule"

**Interbank <IntrBk>** contains the following **UnderlyingPaymentTransaction7** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnlGrpInf>	[0..1]			124
	OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgId>	[1..1]	Text		125
	OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		125
	OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		125
	OriginalMessageDeliveryChannel <OrgnlMsgDlvryChanl>	[0..1]	Text		125
	OriginalInstructionIdentification <OrgnlInstrId>	[0..1]	Text		125
	OriginalEndToEndIdentification <OrgnlEndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		125
	OriginalTransactionIdentification <OrgnlTxId>	[0..1]	Text		126
	OriginalUETR <OrgnlUETR>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		126
	OriginalInterbankSettlementAmount <OrgnlIntrBkSttlmAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	126
	OriginalInterbankSettlementDate <OrgnlIntrBkSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		126
	OriginalTransactionReference <OrgnlTxRef>	[0..1]	±		126
	OriginalServiceLevel <OrgnlSvcLvl>	[0..1]			129
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		129
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		129

### Constraints

- **OriginalIdentificationRule**

Either OriginalInstructionIdentification, OriginalEndToEndIdentification, OriginalTransactionIdentification or OriginalUETR must be present.

Following Must be True

```

/OriginalInstructionIdentification Must be present
Or /OriginalEndToEndIdentification Must be present
Or /OriginalTransactionIdentification Must be present
Or /OriginalUETR Must be present

```

#### 4.1.12.11.2.1 OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnlGrpInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide information on the original message.

**OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnlGrpInf>** contains the following **UnderlyingGroupInformation1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgId>	[1..1]	Text		125
	OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		125
	OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		125
	OriginalMessageDeliveryChannel <OrgnlMsgDlvryChanl>	[0..1]	Text		125

#### 4.1.12.11.2.1.1 OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the original instructing party, to unambiguously identify the original message.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.12.11.2.1.2 OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the original message name identifier to which the message refers.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.12.11.2.1.3 OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the original message was created.

*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 285

#### 4.1.12.11.2.1.4 OriginalMessageDeliveryChannel <OrgnlMsgDlvryChanl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Original channel used for the delivery of the message, to allow the receiver of the request to locate the payment with greater ease.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.12.11.2.2 OriginalInstructionIdentification <OrgnlInstrId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the original instructing party for the original instructed party, to unambiguously identify the original instruction.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.12.11.2.3 OriginalEndToEndIdentification <OrgnlEndToEndId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the original initiating party, to unambiguously identify the original transaction.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.12.11.2.4 OriginalTransactionIdentification <OrgnITxId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the original first instructing agent, to unambiguously identify the transaction.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.12.11.2.5 OriginalUETR <OrgnIUETR>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Universally unique identifier to provide the original end-to-end reference of a payment transaction.

*Datatype:* "UUIDv4Identifier" on page 287

**4.1.12.11.2.6 OriginalInterbankSettlementAmount <OrgnIntrBkSttlmAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money moved between the instructing agent and the instructed agent, as provided in the original instruction.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**4.1.12.11.2.7 OriginalInterbankSettlementDate <OrgnIntrBkSttlmDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date, as provided in the original transaction, on which the amount of money ceases to be available to the agent that owes it and when the amount of money becomes available to the agent to which it is due.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 285

**4.1.12.11.2.8 OriginalTransactionReference <OrgnITxRef>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Key elements used to identify the original transaction that is being referred to.

**OriginalTransactionReference <OrgnlTxRef>** contains the following elements (see "OriginalTransactionReference35" on page 141 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InterbankSettlementAmount <IntrBkSttlmAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	144
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	±		144
	InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		145
	RequestedCollectionDate <ReqdColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		145
	RequestedExecutionDate <ReqdExctnDt>	[0..1]	±		145
	CreditorSchemeldentification <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		145
	SettlementInformation <SttlmInf>	[0..1]		C13, C14, C24, C25, C26, C27, C30, C31	145
	SettlementMethod <SttlmMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		147
	SettlementAccount <SttlmAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	148
	ClearingSystem <ClrSys>	[0..1]			148
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		149
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		149
	InstructingReimbursementAgent <InstgRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		149
	InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount <InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	149
	InstructedReimbursementAgent <InstdRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		150
	InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount <InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	150
	ThirdReimbursementAgent <ThrdRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		151
	ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount <ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	151
	PaymentTypeInfoInformation <PmtTplnf>	[0..1]	±		152
	PaymentMethod <PmtMtd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		153
	MandateRelatedInformation <MndtRltdInf>	[0..1]			153
{Or	DirectDebitMandate <DrctDbtMndt>	[0..1]		C3, C4	155
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		157
	DateOfSignature <DtOfSgntr>	[0..1]	Date		157
	AmendmentIndicator <AmdmntInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		157

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AmendmentInformationDetails <AmdmntInfDtls>	[0..1]			157
	OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtld>	[0..1]	Text		158
	OriginalCreditorSchemeldentification <OrgnlCdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		158
	OriginalCreditorAgent <OrgnlCdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		159
	OriginalCreditorAgentAccount <OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	159
	OriginalDebtor <OrgnlDbtr>	[0..1]	±		160
	OriginalDebtorAccount <OrgnlDbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	160
	OriginalDebtorAgent <OrgnlDbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		161
	OriginalDebtorAgentAccount <OrgnlDbtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	161
	OriginalFinalCollectionDate <OrgnlFnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		162
	OriginalFrequency <OrgnlFrqcy>	[0..1]	±		162
	OriginalReason <OrgnlRsn>	[0..1]			162
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		163
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		163
	OriginalTrackingDays <OrgnlTrckgDays>	[0..1]	Text		163
	ElectronicSignature <ElctrcSgntr>	[0..1]	Text		163
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		163
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		163
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	±		163
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			164
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		164
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		164
	TrackingDays <TrckgDays>	[0..1]	Text		164
Or}	CreditTransferMandate <CdtTrfMndt>	[0..1]	±		164
	RemittanceInformation <RmtInf>	[0..1]	±		165
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		165
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		165
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	166
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		166

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DebtorAgentAccount <DbtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	167
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		167
	CreditorAgentAccount <CdtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	168
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		168
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	169
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		169
	Purpose <Purp>	[0..1]	±		170

#### 4.1.12.11.2.9 OriginalServiceLevel <OrgnlSvcLvl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agreement under which or rules under which the transaction should be processed.

**OriginalServiceLevel <OrgnlSvcLvl>** contains one of the following **ServiceLevel8Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		129
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		129

##### 4.1.12.11.2.9.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as published in an external service level code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalServiceLevel1Code" on page 279

##### 4.1.12.11.2.9.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as a proprietary code.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

##### 4.1.12.11.3 StatementEntry <StmntNtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reference details on the underlying statement cash entry.

*Impacted by:* C22 "OriginalStatementIdentificationOrEntryReferencePresenceRule"

**StatementEntry <StmntNtry>** contains the following elements (see "[UnderlyingStatementEntry5](#)" on page 108 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalAccount <OrgnlAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	108
	OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnlGrpInf>	[0..1]	±		109
	OriginalStatementIdentification <OrgnlStmntId>	[0..1]	Text		109
	OriginalEntryReference <OrgnlNtryRef>	[0..1]	Text		109
	OriginalUETR <OrgnlUETR>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		109
	OriginalEntryAmount <OrgnlNtryAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	109
	OriginalEntryValueDate <OrgnlNtryValDt>	[0..1]	±		110

#### Constraints

- **OriginalStatementIdentificationOrEntryReferencePresenceRule**

OriginalStatementIdentification or OriginalEntryReference must be present, both may be present.

Following Must be True

/OriginalStatementIdentification Must be present

Or /OriginalEntryReference Must be present

#### 4.1.12.11.4 Account <Acct>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reference details on the underlying account.

*Impacted by:* C12 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C11 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**Account <Acct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount40](#)" on page 40 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		40
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		40
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	41
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		41
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		41

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
 /Identification Must be present  
 Or /Proxy Must be present

#### 4.1.12.11.5 Other <Othr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reference details on any other original proprietary reference.

Usage: this element can be used for an investigation on any other data, such as a cheque.

**Other <Othr>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification1](#)" on page 73 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		73
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		73
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		73

#### 4.1.12.12 InvestigationStatus2

*Definition:* Specifies the status of an investigation.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Status <Sts>	[1..1]	CodeSet		131
	StatusReason <StsRsn>	[0..1]			131
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		132

##### 4.1.12.12.1 Status <Sts>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Status of the investigation, as published in an external investigation status code set.

*Datatype:* "[ExternalInvestigationStatus1Code](#)" on page 276

##### 4.1.12.12.2 StatusReason <StsRsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the investigation status.

**StatusReason <StsRsn>** contains one of the following **InvestigationStatusReason1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		132

**4.1.12.12.2.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Status reason, as published in an external investigation status reason code set.

*Datatype:* "ExternalInvestigationStatusReason1Code" on page 277

**4.1.12.12.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Status reason, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.12.13 InvestigationReason1Choice**

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the investigation.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		132

**4.1.12.13.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the investigation being opened, as published in the external investigation reason code set.

*Datatype:* "ExternalInvestigationReason1Code" on page 276

**4.1.12.13.2 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the investigation being opened, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.12.14 InvestigationType1Choice**

*Definition:* Specifies the type of an investigation.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		133

**4.1.12.14.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Investigation type, as published in an external investigation type code set.

*Datatype:* "ExternalInvestigationType1Code" on page 277

#### 4.1.12.14.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Investigation type, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

### 4.1.13 Mandate

#### 4.1.13.1 MandateClassification1Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the high level purpose of the instruction based on a set of pre-defined categories.

*Usage:* This is used by the initiating party to provide information concerning the processing of the payment. It is likely to trigger special processing by any of the agents involved in the payment chain.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		133
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		133

##### 4.1.13.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Category purpose, as published in an external category purpose code list.

*Datatype:* "MandateClassification1Code" on page 281

CodeName	Name	Definition
FIXE	Fixed	Direct debit amount is fixed.
USGB	UsageBased	Direct debit amount is based on usage.
VARI	Variable	Direct debit amount is variable.

##### 4.1.13.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Category purpose, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.13.2 MandateTypeInformation2

*Definition:* Set of elements used to further detail the information related to the type of payment.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			134
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		134
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		134
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			134
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		135
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		135
	CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>	[0..1]			135
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		135
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		135
	Classification <Clssfctn>	[0..1]	±		135

#### 4.1.13.2.1 ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agreement under which or rules under which the mandate resides.

**ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>** contains one of the following **ServiceLevel8Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		134
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		134

##### 4.1.13.2.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as published in an external service level code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalServiceLevel1Code" on page 279

##### 4.1.13.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as a proprietary code.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.13.2.2 LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* User community specific instrument.

*Usage:* This element is used to specify a local instrument, local clearing option and/or further qualify the service or service level.

**LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>** contains one of the following **LocalInstrument2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		135
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		135

#### 4.1.13.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the local instrument, as published in an external local instrument code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalLocalInstrument1Code" on page 277

#### 4.1.13.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the local instrument, as a proprietary code.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.13.2.3 CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the high level purpose of the mandate based on a set of pre-defined categories.

**CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>** contains one of the following **CategoryPurpose1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		135
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		135

#### 4.1.13.2.3.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Category purpose, as published in an external category purpose code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalCategoryPurpose1Code" on page 273

#### 4.1.13.2.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Category purpose, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.13.2.4 Classification <Clssfctn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Type of direct debit instruction.

**Classification <Clssfctn>** contains one of the following elements (see "[MandateClassification1Choice](#)" on page 133 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		133
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		133

## 4.1.14 Miscellaneous

### 4.1.14.1 RemittanceAmount2

*Definition:* Nature of the amount and currency on a document referred to in the remittance section, typically either the original amount due/payable or the amount actually remitted for the referenced document.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	136
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			137
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			137
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		137
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		138
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	138
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	138
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			138
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			139
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		139
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	139
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			140
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	140
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		140
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		140
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		141
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	141

#### 4.1.14.1.1 DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount specified is the exact amount due and payable to the creditor.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.1.14.1.2 DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Amount specified for the referred document is the amount of discount to be applied to the amount due and payable to the creditor.

**DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>** contains the following **DiscountAmountAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			137
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		137
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		138
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	138

##### 4.1.14.1.2.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of the amount.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **DiscountAmountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		137
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		138

##### 4.1.14.1.2.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalDiscountAmountType1Code" on page 273

#### 4.1.14.1.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a free-text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.14.1.2.2 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money, which has been typed.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.1.14.1.3 CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount specified for the referred document is the amount of a credit note.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.1.14.1.4 TaxAmount <TaxAmt>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Quantity of cash resulting from the calculation of the tax.

**TaxAmount <TaxAmt>** contains the following **TaxAmountAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			139
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		139
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	139

#### 4.1.14.1.4.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of the amount.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **TaxAmountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		139

#### 4.1.14.1.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalTaxAmountType1Code" on page 280

#### 4.1.14.1.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a free-text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.14.1.4.2 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money, which has been typed.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.1.14.1.5 AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies detailed information on the amount and reason of the document adjustment.

**AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>** contains the following **DocumentAdjustment1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	140
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		140
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		140
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		141

##### 4.1.14.1.5.1 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money of the document adjustment.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

##### 4.1.14.1.5.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the adjustment must be subtracted or added to the total amount.

*Datatype:* "CreditDebitCode" on page 270

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

##### 4.1.14.1.5.3 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the adjustment.

*Datatype:* "Max4Text" on page 291

#### **4.1.14.1.5.4 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides further details on the document adjustment.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 290

#### **4.1.14.1.6 RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money remitted for the referred document.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

##### **Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### **4.1.14.2 OriginalTransactionReference35**

*Definition:* Specifies key elements as defined in the original transaction.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InterbankSettlementAmount <IntrBkSttlmAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	144
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	±		144
	InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		145
	RequestedCollectionDate <ReqdColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		145
	RequestedExecutionDate <ReqdExctnDt>	[0..1]	±		145
	CreditorSchemeldentification <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		145
	SettlementInformation <SttlmInf>	[0..1]		C13, C14, C24, C25, C26, C27, C30, C31	145
	SettlementMethod <SttlmMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		147
	SettlementAccount <SttlmAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	148
	ClearingSystem <ClrSys>	[0..1]			148
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		149
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		149
	InstructingReimbursementAgent <InstgRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		149
	InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount <InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	149
	InstructedReimbursementAgent <InstdRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		150
	InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount <InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	150
	ThirdReimbursementAgent <ThrdRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		151
	ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount <ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	151
	PaymentTypeInformation <PmtTplnf>	[0..1]	±		152
	PaymentMethod <PmtMtd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		153
	MandateRelatedInformation <MndtRltdInf>	[0..1]			153
{Or	DirectDebitMandate <DrctDbtMndt>	[0..1]		C3, C4	155
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		157
	DateOfSignature <DtOfSgntr>	[0..1]	Date		157
	AmendmentIndicator <AmdmntInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		157
	AmendmentInformationDetails <AmdmntInfDtls>	[0..1]			157

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtId>	[0..1]	Text		158
	OriginalCreditorSchemeIdentification <OrgnlCdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		158
	OriginalCreditorAgent <OrgnlCdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		159
	OriginalCreditorAgentAccount <OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	159
	OriginalDebtor <OrgnlDbtr>	[0..1]	±		160
	OriginalDebtorAccount <OrgnlDbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	160
	OriginalDebtorAgent <OrgnlDbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		161
	OriginalDebtorAgentAccount <OrgnlDbtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	161
	OriginalFinalCollectionDate <OrgnlFnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		162
	OriginalFrequency <OrgnlFrqcy>	[0..1]	±		162
	OriginalReason <OrgnlRsn>	[0..1]			162
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		163
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		163
	OriginalTrackingDays <OrgnlTrckgDays>	[0..1]	Text		163
	ElectronicSignature <ElctrcSgntr>	[0..1]	Text		163
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		163
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		163
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	±		163
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			164
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		164
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		164
	TrackingDays <TrckgDays>	[0..1]	Text		164
Or}	CreditTransferMandate <CdtTrfMndt>	[0..1]	±		164
	RemittanceInformation <RmtInf>	[0..1]	±		165
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		165
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		165
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	166
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		166
	DebtorAgentAccount <DbtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	167

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		167
	CreditorAgentAccount <CdtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	168
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		168
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	169
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		169
	Purpose <Purp>	[0..1]	±		170

#### 4.1.14.2.1 InterbankSettlementAmount <IntrBkSttlmAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money moved between the instructing agent and the instructed agent.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.1.14.2.2 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party.

**Amount <Amt>** contains one of the following elements (see "AmountType4Choice" on page 45 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	InstructedAmount <InstdAmt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	45
Or}	EquivalentAmount <EqvtAmt>	[1..1]			46
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	46
	CurrencyOfTransfer <CcyOfTrf>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	46

**4.1.14.2.3 InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date on which the amount of money ceases to be available to the agent that owes it and when the amount of money becomes available to the agent to which it is due.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 285

**4.1.14.2.4 RequestedCollectionDate <ReqdColltnDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the creditor requests that the amount of money is to be collected from the debtor.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 285

**4.1.14.2.5 RequestedExecutionDate <ReqdExctnDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date at which the initiating party requests the clearing agent to process the payment.

*Usage:* This is the date on which the debtor's account is to be debited. If payment by cheque, the date when the cheque must be generated by the bank.

**RequestedExecutionDate <ReqdExctnDt>** contains one of the following elements (see "DateAndDateTime2Choice" on page 53 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		53
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		53

**4.1.14.2.6 CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Credit party that signs the mandate.

**CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification135" on page 175 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		175
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		175
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		176
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C7	176
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		177

**4.1.14.2.7 SettlementInformation <SttlmInf>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the details on how the settlement of the original transaction(s) between the instructing agent and the instructed agent was completed.

*Impacted by:* C13 "InstructedReimbursementAgentAccountRule", C14 "InstructingReimbursementAgentAccountRule", C24 "SettlementMethodAgentRule", C25 "SettlementMethodClearingRule", C26 "SettlementMethodCoverAgentRule", C27 "SettlementMethodCoverRule", C30 "ThirdReimbursementAgentAccountRule", C31 "ThirdReimbursementAgentRule"

**SettlementInformation <SttlmInf>** contains the following **SettlementInstruction11** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SettlementMethod <SttlmMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		147
	SettlementAccount <SttlmAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	148
	ClearingSystem <ClrSys>	[0..1]			148
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		149
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		149
	InstructingReimbursementAgent <InstgRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		149
	InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount <InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	149
	InstructedReimbursementAgent <InstdRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		150
	InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount <InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	150
	ThirdReimbursementAgent <ThrdRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		151
	ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount <ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	151

**Constraints**

- **InstructedReimbursementAgentAccountRule**

If InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then InstructedReimbursementAgent must be present.

```
On Condition
    /InstructedReimbursementAgent is absent
Following Must be True
    /InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount Must be absent
```

- **InstructingReimbursementAgentAccountRule**

If InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then InstructingReimbursementAgent must be present.

```
On Condition
    /InstructingReimbursementAgent is absent
Following Must be True
    /InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount Must be absent
```

- **SettlementMethodAgentRule**

If SettlementMethod is equal to INDA or INGA, then ReimbursementAgent(s) and ClearingSystem are not allowed.

```

On Condition
  /SettlementMethod is equal to value 'InstructingAgent'
Or   /SettlementMethod is equal to value 'InstructedAgent'
Following Must be True
  /ClearingSystem Must be absent
And   /InstructingReimbursementAgent Must be absent
And   /InstructedReimbursementAgent Must be absent
And   /ThirdReimbursementAgent Must be absent

```

- **SettlementMethodClearingRule**

If SettlementMethod is equal to CLRG, then SettlementAccount and ReimbursementAgent(s) are not allowed.

```

On Condition
  /SettlementMethod is equal to value 'ClearingSystem'
Following Must be True
  /SettlementAccount Must be absent
And   /InstructingReimbursementAgent Must be absent
And   /InstructedReimbursementAgent Must be absent
And   /ThirdReimbursementAgent Must be absent

```

- **SettlementMethodCoverAgentRule**

If SettlementMethod is equal to COVE, then InstructedReimbursementAgent or InstructingReimbursementAgent must be present.

```

On Condition
  /SettlementMethod is equal to value 'CoverMethod'
Following Must be True
  /InstructingReimbursementAgent Must be present
Or   /InstructedReimbursementAgent Must be present

```

- **SettlementMethodCoverRule**

If SettlementMethod is equal to COVE, then SettlementAccount and ClearingSystem are not allowed.

```

On Condition
  /SettlementMethod is equal to value 'CoverMethod'
Following Must be True
  /SettlementAccount Must be absent
And   /ClearingSystem Must be absent

```

- **ThirdReimbursementAgentAccountRule**

If ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then ThirdReimbursementAgent must be present.

```

On Condition
  /ThirdReimbursementAgent is absent
Following Must be True
  /ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount Must be absent

```

- **ThirdReimbursementAgentRule**

If ThirdReimbursementAgent is present, then InstructingReimbursementAgent and InstructedReimbursementAgent must both be present.

```

On Condition
  /ThirdReimbursementAgent is present
Following Must be True
  /InstructingReimbursementAgent Must be present
And   /InstructedReimbursementAgent Must be present

```

#### 4.1.14.2.7.1 SettlementMethod <SttlmMtd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Method used to settle the (batch of) payment instructions.

*Datatype:* "SettlementMethod1Code" on page 284

CodeName	Name	Definition
INDA	InstructedAgent	Settlement is done by the agent instructed to execute a payment instruction.
INGA	InstructingAgent	Settlement is done by the agent instructing and forwarding the payment to the next party in the payment chain.
COVE	CoverMethod	Settlement is done through a cover payment.
CLRG	ClearingSystem	Settlement is done through a payment clearing system.

#### 4.1.14.2.7.2 SettlementAccount <SttlmAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* A specific purpose account used to post debit and credit entries as a result of the transaction.

*Impacted by:* C12 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C11 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**SettlementAccount <SttlmAcct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 40 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		40
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		40
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	41
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		41
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		41

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
 /Identification Must be present  
 Or /Proxy Must be present

#### 4.1.14.2.7.3 ClearingSystem <ClrSys>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specification of a pre-agreed offering between clearing agents or the channel through which the payment instruction is processed.

**ClearingSystem <ClrSys>** contains one of the following **ClearingSystemIdentification3Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		149
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		149

#### 4.1.14.2.7.3.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Infrastructure through which the payment instruction is processed, as published in an external clearing system identification code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalCashClearingSystem1Code" on page 272

#### 4.1.14.2.7.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Clearing system identification in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.14.2.7.4 InstructingReimbursementAgent <InstgRmbrsmntAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent through which the instructing agent will reimburse the instructed agent.

Usage: If InstructingAgent and InstructedAgent have the same reimbursement agent, then only InstructingReimbursementAgent must be used.

**InstructingReimbursementAgent <InstgRmbrsmntAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 67 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		67
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		68

#### 4.1.14.2.7.5 InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount <InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account of the instructing reimbursement agent account at its servicing agent in the payment chain.

*Impacted by:* C12 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C11 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount <InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount40](#)" on page 40 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		40
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		40
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	41
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		41
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		41

**Constraints**

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
 /Identification Must be present  
 Or /Proxy Must be present

**4.1.14.2.7.6 InstructedReimbursementAgent <InstdRmbrsmntAgt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent at which the instructed agent will be reimbursed.

*Usage:* If InstructedReimbursementAgent contains a branch of the InstructedAgent, then the party in InstructedAgent will claim reimbursement from that branch/will be paid by that branch.

*Usage:* If InstructingAgent and InstructedAgent have the same reimbursement agent, then only InstructingReimbursementAgent must be used.

**InstructedReimbursementAgent <InstdRmbrsmntAgt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 67 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		67
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		68

**4.1.14.2.7.7 InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount <InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account of the instructed reimbursement agent account at its servicing agent in the payment chain.

*Impacted by:* [C12 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule"](#), [C11 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"](#)

**InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount <InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount40](#)" on page 40 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		40
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		40
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	41
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		41
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		41

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
 /Identification Must be present  
 Or /Proxy Must be present

#### 4.1.14.2.7.8 ThirdReimbursementAgent <ThrdRmbrsmntAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent at which the instructed agent will be reimbursed.

*Usage:* If ThirdReimbursementAgent contains a branch of the InstructedAgent, then the party in InstructedAgent will claim reimbursement from that branch/will be paid by that branch.

**ThirdReimbursementAgent <ThrdRmbrsmntAgt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 67 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		67
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		68

#### 4.1.14.2.7.9 ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount <ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account of the third reimbursement agent account at its servicing agent in the payment chain.

*Impacted by:* [C12 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule"](#), [C11 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"](#)

**ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount <ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 40 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		40
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		40
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	41
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		41
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		41

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
  /Identification Must be present
Or    /Proxy Must be present
```

#### 4.1.14.2.8 PaymentTypeInfo <PmtTInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to further specify the type of transaction.

**PaymentTypeInformation <PmtTplnf>** contains the following elements (see "PaymentTypeInformation27" on page 178 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InstructionPriority <InstrPrty>	[0..1]	CodeSet		179
	ClearingChannel <ClrChanl>	[0..1]	CodeSet		179
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..*]			180
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		180
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		180
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			180
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		180
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		180
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		181
	CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>	[0..1]			181
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		181
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		181

#### 4.1.14.2.9 PaymentMethod <PmtMtd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the means of payment that will be used to move the amount of money.

*Datatype:* "PaymentMethod4Code" on page 282

CodeName	Name	Definition
CHK	Cheque	Written order to a bank to pay a certain amount of money from one person to another person.
TRF	CreditTransfer	Transfer of an amount of money in the books of the account servicer.
DD	DirectDebit	Collection of an amount of money from the debtor's bank account by the creditor. The amount of money and dates of collections may vary.
TRA	TransferAdvice	Transfer of an amount of money in the books of the account servicer. An advice should be sent back to the account owner.

#### 4.1.14.2.10 MandateRelatedInformation <MndtRltdInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides further details of the mandate signed between the creditor and the debtor.

**MandateRelatedInformation <MndtRltdInf>** contains one of the following **MandateRelatedData2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	DirectDebitMandate <DrctDbtMndt>	[0..1]		C3, C4	155
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		157
	DateOfSignature <DtOfSgntr>	[0..1]	Date		157
	AmendmentIndicator <AmdmntInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		157
	AmendmentInformationDetails <AmdmntInfDtls>	[0..1]			157
	OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtId>	[0..1]	Text		158
	OriginalCreditorSchemeIdentification <OrgnlCdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		158
	OriginalCreditorAgent <OrgnlCdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		159
	OriginalCreditorAgentAccount <OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	159
	OriginalDebtor <OrgnlDbtr>	[0..1]	±		160
	OriginalDebtorAccount <OrgnlDbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	160
	OriginalDebtorAgent <OrgnlDbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		161
	OriginalDebtorAgentAccount <OrgnlDbtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	161
	OriginalFinalCollectionDate <OrgnlFnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		162
	OriginalFrequency <OrgnlFrqcy>	[0..1]	±		162
	OriginalReason <OrgnlRsn>	[0..1]			162
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		163
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		163
	OriginalTrackingDays <OrgnlTrckgDays>	[0..1]	Text		163
	ElectronicSignature <ElctrcSgntr>	[0..1]	Text		163
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		163
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		163
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	±		163
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			164
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		164
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		164
	TrackingDays <TrckgDays>	[0..1]	Text		164
Or}	CreditTransferMandate <CdtTrfMndt>	[0..1]	±		164

**4.1.14.2.10.1 DirectDebitMandate <DrctDbtMndt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specific direct debit mandate data.

*Impacted by:* C3 "AmendmentIndicatorFalseRule", C4 "AmendmentIndicatorTrueRule"

**DirectDebitMandate <DrctDbtMndt>** contains the following **MandateRelatedInformation15** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Mandateldentification <Mndtld>	[0..1]	Text		157
	DateOfSignature <DtOfSgntr>	[0..1]	Date		157
	AmendmentIndicator <AmdmntInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		157
	AmendmentInformationDetails <AmdmntInfDtls>	[0..1]			157
	OriginalMandateldentification <OrgnlMndtld>	[0..1]	Text		158
	OriginalCreditorSchemeldentification <OrgnlCdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		158
	OriginalCreditorAgent <OrgnlCdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		159
	OriginalCreditorAgentAccount <OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	159
	OriginalDebtor <OrgnlDbtr>	[0..1]	±		160
	OriginalDebtorAccount <OrgnlDbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	160
	OriginalDebtorAgent <OrgnlDbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		161
	OriginalDebtorAgentAccount <OrgnlDbtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	161
	OriginalFinalCollectionDate <OrgnlFnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		162
	OriginalFrequency <OrgnlFrqcy>	[0..1]	±		162
	OriginalReason <OrgnlRsn>	[0..1]			162
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		163
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		163
	OriginalTrackingDays <OrgnlTrckgDays>	[0..1]	Text		163
	ElectronicSignature <ElctrcSgntr>	[0..1]	Text		163
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		163
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		163
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	±		163
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			164
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		164
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		164
	TrackingDays <TrckgDays>	[0..1]	Text		164

### Constraints

- **AmendmentIndicatorFalseRule**

If AmendmentIndicator is false, then AmendmentInformationDetails is not allowed.

```

On Condition
  /AmendmentIndicator is equal to value 'false'
Following Must be True
  /AmendmentInformationDetails Must be absent

```

- **AmendmentIndicatorTrueRule**

If AmendmentIndicator is true, then AmendmentInformationDetails must be present.

```

On Condition
  /AmendmentIndicator is equal to value 'true'
Following Must be True
  /AmendmentInformationDetails Must be present

```

#### 4.1.14.2.10.1.1 MandateIdentification <Mndtld>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously identify the mandate.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.14.2.10.1.2 DateOfSignature <DtOfSgntr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date on which the direct debit mandate has been signed by the debtor.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 285

#### 4.1.14.2.10.1.3 AmendmentIndicator <AmdmntInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicator notifying whether the underlying mandate is amended or not.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "TrueFalseIndicator" on page 287):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 4.1.14.2.10.1.4 AmendmentInformationDetails <AmdmntInfDtls>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* List of mandate elements that have been modified.

**AmendmentInformationDetails <AmdmntInfDtls>** contains the following **AmendmentInformationDetails14** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalMandateldentification <OrgnlMndtld>	[0..1]	Text		158
	OriginalCreditorSchemeldentification <OrgnlCdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		158
	OriginalCreditorAgent <OrgnlCdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		159
	OriginalCreditorAgentAccount <OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	159
	OriginalDebtor <OrgnlDbtr>	[0..1]	±		160
	OriginalDebtorAccount <OrgnlDbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	160
	OriginalDebtorAgent <OrgnlDbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		161
	OriginalDebtorAgentAccount <OrgnlDbtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C12, C11	161
	OriginalFinalCollectionDate <OrgnlFnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		162
	OriginalFrequency <OrgnlFrqcy>	[0..1]	±		162
	OriginalReason <OrgnlRsn>	[0..1]			162
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		163
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		163
	OriginalTrackingDays <OrgnlTrckgDays>	[0..1]	Text		163

#### 4.1.14.2.10.1.4.1 OriginalMandateldentification <OrgnlMndtld>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously identify the original mandate.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.14.2.10.1.4.2 OriginalCreditorSchemeldentification <OrgnlCdtrSchmeld>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Original creditor scheme identification that has been modified.

**OriginalCreditorSchemeIdentification <OrgnlCdtrSchmeld>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification135](#)" on page 175 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		175
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		175
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		176
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C7	176
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		177

#### 4.1.14.2.10.1.4.3 OriginalCreditorAgent <OrgnlCdtrAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Original creditor agent that has been modified.

**OriginalCreditorAgent <OrgnlCdtrAgt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 67 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		67
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		68

#### 4.1.14.2.10.1.4.4 OriginalCreditorAgentAccount <OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Original creditor agent account that has been modified.

*Impacted by:* [C12 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule"](#), [C11 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"](#)

**OriginalCreditorAgentAccount <OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount40](#)" on page 40 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		40
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		40
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	41
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		41
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		41

**Constraints**

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
 /Identification Must be present  
 Or /Proxy Must be present

**4.1.14.2.10.1.4.5 OriginalDebtor <OrgnIDbtr>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Original debtor that has been modified.

**OriginalDebtor <OrgnIDbtr>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification135](#)" on page 175 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		175
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		175
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		176
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C7	176
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		177

**4.1.14.2.10.1.4.6 OriginalDebtorAccount <OrgnIDbtrAcct>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Original debtor account that has been modified.

*Impacted by:* C12 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C11 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**OriginalDebtorAccount <OrgnIDbtrAcct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount40](#)" on page 40 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		40
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		40
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	41
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		41
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		41

**Constraints**

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
 /Identification Must be present  
 Or /Proxy Must be present

**4.1.14.2.10.1.4.7 OriginalDebtorAgent <OrgnIDbtrAgt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Original debtor agent that has been modified.

**OriginalDebtorAgent <OrgnIDbtrAgt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 67 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		67
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		68

**4.1.14.2.10.1.4.8 OriginalDebtorAgentAccount <OrgnIDbtrAgtAcct>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Original debtor agent account that has been modified.

*Impacted by:* [C12 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule"](#), [C11 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"](#)

**OriginalDebtorAgentAccount <OrgnIDbtrAgtAcct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount40](#)" on page 40 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		40
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		40
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	41
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		41
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		41

**Constraints**

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
 /Identification Must be present  
 Or /Proxy Must be present

**4.1.14.2.10.1.4.9 OriginalFinalCollectionDate <OrgnlFnIColltnDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Original final collection date that has been modified.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 285

**4.1.14.2.10.1.4.10 OriginalFrequency <OrgnlFrqcy>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Original frequency that has been modified.

**OriginalFrequency <OrgnlFrqcy>** contains one of the following elements (see "Frequency36Choice" on page 69 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		69
Or	Period <Prd>	[1..1]			70
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		70
	CountPerPeriod <CntPerPrd>	[1..1]	Quantity		70
Or}	PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]			71
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		71
	PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]	Text		71

**4.1.14.2.10.1.4.11 OriginalReason <OrgnlRsn>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Original reason for the mandate to allow the user to distinguish between different mandates for the same creditor.

**OriginalReason <OrgnlRsn>** contains one of the following **MandateSetupReason1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		163
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		163

**4.1.14.2.10.1.4.11.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the mandate setup, as published in an external reason code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalMandateSetupReason1Code" on page 278

**4.1.14.2.10.1.4.11.2 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the mandate setup, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 291

**4.1.14.2.10.1.4.12 OriginalTrackingDays <OrgnlTrckgDays>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Original number of tracking days that has been modified.

*Datatype:* "Exact2NumericText" on page 289

**4.1.14.2.10.1.5 ElectronicSignature <ElctrncSgntr>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Additional security provisions, such as a digital signature, as provided by the debtor.

*Datatype:* "Max1025Text" on page 289

**4.1.14.2.10.1.6 FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date of the first collection of a direct debit as per the mandate.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 285

**4.1.14.2.10.1.7 FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date of the final collection of a direct debit as per the mandate.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 285

**4.1.14.2.10.1.8 Frequency <Frqcy>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Regularity with which direct debit instructions are to be created and processed.

**Frequency <Frqcy>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Frequency36Choice](#)" on page 69 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		69
Or	Period <Prd>	[1..1]			70
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		70
	CountPerPeriod <CntPerPrd>	[1..1]	Quantity		70
Or}	PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]			71
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		71
	PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]	Text		71

#### 4.1.14.2.10.1.9 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the direct debit mandate to allow the user to distinguish between different mandates for the same creditor.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains one of the following **MandateSetupReason1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		164
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		164

#### 4.1.14.2.10.1.9.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the mandate setup, as published in an external reason code list.

*Datatype:* "[ExternalMandateSetupReason1Code](#)" on page 278

#### 4.1.14.2.10.1.9.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the mandate setup, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "[Max70Text](#)" on page 291

#### 4.1.14.2.10.1.10 TrackingDays <TrckgDays>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the number of days the direct debit instruction must be tracked.

*Datatype:* "[Exact2NumericText](#)" on page 289

#### 4.1.14.2.10.2 CreditTransferMandate <CdtTrfMndt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specific credit transfer mandate data.

**CreditTransferMandate <CdtTrfMndt>** contains the following elements (see "[CreditTransferMandateData1](#)" on page 53 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MandatIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		54
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		54
	DateOfSignature <DtOfSgntr>	[0..1]	Date		55
	DateOfVerification <DtOfVrfctn>	[0..1]	DateTime		55
	ElectronicSignature <ElctrcnSgntr>	[0..1]	Binary		55
	FirstPaymentDate <FrstPmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		55
	FinalPaymentDate <FnlpmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		55
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	±		55
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			56
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		56
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		56

#### 4.1.14.2.11 RemittanceInformation <RmtInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Information supplied to enable the matching of an entry with the items that the transfer is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system.

**RemittanceInformation <RmtInf>** contains the following elements (see "[RemittanceInformation21](#)" on page 195 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Unstructured <Ustrd>	[0..*]	Text		195
	Structured <Strd>	[0..*]	±		195

#### 4.1.14.2.12 UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

**UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 174 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		174
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		174

#### 4.1.14.2.13 Debtor <Dbtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

**Debtor <Dbtr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 174 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		174
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		174

#### 4.1.14.2.14 DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account of the debtor to which a debit entry will be made as a result of the transaction.

*Impacted by:* [C12 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule"](#), [C11 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"](#)

**DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount40](#)" on page 40 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		40
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		40
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	41
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		41
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		41

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
  /Identification Must be present
Or    /Proxy Must be present
```

#### 4.1.14.2.15 DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Financial institution servicing an account for the debtor.

**DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 67 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		67
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		68

#### 4.1.14.2.16 DebtorAgentAccount <DbtrAgtAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account of the debtor agent at its servicing agent in the payment chain.

*Impacted by:* [C12 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule"](#), [C11 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"](#)

**DebtorAgentAccount <DbtrAgtAcct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount40](#)" on page 40 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		40
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		40
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	41
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		41
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		41

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
  /Identification Must be present
Or    /Proxy Must be present
```

#### 4.1.14.2.17 CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Financial institution servicing an account for the creditor.

**CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 67 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		67
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		68

#### 4.1.14.2.18 CreditorAgentAccount <CdtrAgtAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account of the creditor agent at its servicing agent to which a credit entry will be made as a result of the payment transaction.

*Impacted by:* [C12 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule"](#), [C11 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"](#)

**CreditorAgentAccount <CdtrAgtAcct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount40](#)" on page 40 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		40
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		40
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	41
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		41
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		41

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
  /Identification Must be present
Or    /Proxy Must be present
```

#### 4.1.14.2.19 Creditor <Cdtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party to which an amount of money is due.

**Creditor <Cdtr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 174 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		174
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		174

#### 4.1.14.2.20 CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account of the creditor to which a credit entry will be posted as a result of the payment transaction.

*Impacted by:* [C12 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule"](#), [C11 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"](#)

**CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount40](#)" on page 40 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		40
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		40
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	41
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		41
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		41

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
  /Identification Must be present
Or    /Proxy Must be present
```

#### 4.1.14.2.21 UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Ultimate party to which an amount of money is due.

**UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 174 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		174
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		174

#### 4.1.14.2.22 Purpose <Purp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Underlying reason for the payment transaction.

Usage:

Purpose is used by the end customers, that is initiating party, (ultimate) debtor, (ultimate) creditor to provide information concerning the nature of the payment. Purpose is a content element, which is not used for processing by any of the agents involved in the payment chain.

**Purpose <Purp>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Purpose2Choice](#)" on page 171 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		171
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		171

#### 4.1.14.3 SupplementaryData1

*Definition:* Additional information that can not be captured in the structured fields and/or any other specific block.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		170
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		171

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

##### 4.1.14.3.1 PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous reference to the location where the supplementary data must be inserted in the message instance.

In the case of XML, this is expressed by a valid XPath.

*Datatype:* "Max350Text" on page 290

#### 4.1.14.3.2 Envelope <Envlp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Technical element wrapping the supplementary data.

*Type:* (External Schema)

Technical component that contains the validated supplementary data information. This technical envelope allows to segregate the supplementary data information from any other information.

#### 4.1.14.4 Purpose2Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the underlying reason for the payment transaction.

Usage: Purpose is used by the end-customers, that is initiating party, (ultimate) debtor, (ultimate) creditor to provide information concerning the nature of the payment. Purpose is a content element, which is not used for processing by any of the agents involved in the payment chain.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		171
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		171

##### 4.1.14.4.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Underlying reason for the payment transaction, as published in an external purpose code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalPurpose1Code" on page 279

##### 4.1.14.4.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Purpose, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.14.5 OriginalGroupInformation29

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identifier of the group of transactions as assigned by the original instructing party.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgld>	[1..1]	Text		171
	OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmlId>	[1..1]	Text		172
	OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		172

##### 4.1.14.5.1 OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgld>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference assigned by the original instructing party to unambiguously identify the original message.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.14.5.2 OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the original message name identifier to which the message refers, for example, pacs.003.001.01 or MT103.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.14.5.3 OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Original date and time at which the message was created.

*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 285

## 4.1.15 Organisation Identification

### 4.1.15.1 OrganisationIdentification29

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous way to identify an organisation.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C5	172
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		173
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			173
	Identification </Id>	[1..1]	Text		173
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			173
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		173
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		174
	Issuer </Issr>	[0..1]	Text		174

#### 4.1.15.1.1 AnyBIC <AnyBIC>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Business identification code of the organisation.

*Impacted by:* C5 "AnyBIC"

*Datatype:* "AnyBICDec2014Identifier" on page 286

**Constraints**

- **AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**4.1.15.1.2 LEI <LEI>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Legal entity identification as an alternate identification for a party.

*Datatype:* "LEIIdentifier" on page 287

**4.1.15.1.3 Other <Othr>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Unique identification of an organisation, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

**Other <Othr>** contains the following **GenericOrganisationIdentification1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		173
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			173
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		173
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		174
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		174

**4.1.15.1.3.1 Identification <Id>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification assigned by an institution.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.15.1.3.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

**SchemeName <SchmeNm>** contains one of the following **OrganisationIdentificationSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		173
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		174

**4.1.15.1.3.2.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalOrganisationIdentification1Code" on page 278](#)

#### 4.1.15.1.3.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 291](#)

#### 4.1.15.1.3.3 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 291](#)

## 4.1.16 Party Identification

### 4.1.16.1 Party40Choice

*Definition:* Identification of a person, an organisation or a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		174
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		174

#### 4.1.16.1.1 Party <Pty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a person or an organisation.

**Party <Pty>** contains the following elements (see ["PartyIdentification135" on page 175](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		175
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		175
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		176
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C7	176
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		177

#### 4.1.16.1.2 Agent <Agt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a financial institution.

**Agent <Agt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 67 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		67
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		68

#### 4.1.16.2 PartyIdentification135

*Definition:* Specifies the identification of a person or an organisation.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		175
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		175
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		176
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C7	176
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		177

##### 4.1.16.2.1 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name by which a party is known and which is usually used to identify that party.

*Datatype:* "[Max140Text](#)" on page 290

##### 4.1.16.2.2 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

**PostalAddress <PstIAdr>** contains the following elements (see "[PostalAddress24](#)" on page 187 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			188
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		188
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		189
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		189
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		189
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		189
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		189
	BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		190
	PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		190
	Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		190
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		190
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		191
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C7	191
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		191

#### 4.1.16.2.3 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a party.

**Identification <Id>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party38Choice](#)" on page 177 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]	±		177
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]	±		178

#### 4.1.16.2.4 CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Country in which a person resides (the place of a person's home). In the case of a company, it is the country from which the affairs of that company are directed.

Impacted by: C7 "Country"

Datatype: "CountryCode" on page 270

#### Constraints

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

#### 4.1.16.2.5 ContactDetails <CtctDtIs>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to indicate how to contact the party.

ContactDetails <CtctDtIs> contains the following elements (see "Contact4" on page 184 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		185
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		185
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		185
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		186
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		186
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	EmailPurpose <EmailPurp>	[0..1]	Text		186
	JobTitle <JobTitl>	[0..1]	Text		186
	Responsibility <Rspnsblty>	[0..1]	Text		186
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		186
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			186
	ChannelType <ChanlTp>	[1..1]	Text		187
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PreferredMethod <PrefrdMtd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187

#### 4.1.16.3 Party38Choice

Definition: Nature or use of the account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <Orgld>	[1..1]	±		177
Or}	PrivateIdentification <Prvtld>	[1..1]	±		178

#### 4.1.16.3.1 OrganisationIdentification <Orgld>

Presence: [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous way to identify an organisation.

**OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>** contains the following elements (see "[OrganisationIdentification29](#)" on page 172 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C5	172
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		173
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			173
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		173
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			173
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		173
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		174
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		174

#### 4.1.16.3.2 PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a person, for example a passport.

**PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>** contains the following elements (see "[PersonIdentification13](#)" on page 182 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			182
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		182
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		182
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		183
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C7	183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184

## 4.1.17 Payment Type

### 4.1.17.1 PaymentTypeInfoInformation27

*Definition:* Provides further details of the type of payment.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InstructionPriority <InstrPrty>	[0..1]	CodeSet		179
	ClearingChannel <ClrChanl>	[0..1]	CodeSet		179
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..*]			180
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		180
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		180
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			180
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		180
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		180
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		181
	CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>	[0..1]			181
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		181
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		181

#### 4.1.17.1.1 InstructionPriority <InstrPrty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicator of the urgency or order of importance that the instructing party would like the instructed party to apply to the processing of the instruction.

*Datatype:* "Priority2Code" on page 282

CodeName	Name	Definition
HIGH	High	Priority level is high.
NORM	Normal	Priority level is normal.

#### 4.1.17.1.2 ClearingChannel <ClrChanl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the clearing channel to be used to process the payment instruction.

*Datatype:* "ClearingChannel2Code" on page 269

CodeName	Name	Definition
RTGS	RealTimeGrossSettlementSystem	Clearing channel is a real-time gross settlement system.
RTNS	RealTimeNetSettlementSystem	Clearing channel is a real-time net settlement system.
MPNS	MassPaymentNetSystem	Clearing channel is a mass payment net settlement system.
BOOK	BookTransfer	Payment through internal book transfer.

**4.1.17.1.3 ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Agreement under which or rules under which the transaction should be processed.

**ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>** contains one of the following **ServiceLevel8Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		180
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		180

**4.1.17.1.3.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as published in an external service level code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalServiceLevel1Code" on page 279

**4.1.17.1.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as a proprietary code.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.17.1.4 LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* User community specific instrument.

*Usage:* This element is used to specify a local instrument, local clearing option and/or further qualify the service or service level.

**LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>** contains one of the following **LocalInstrument2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		180
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		180

**4.1.17.1.4.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the local instrument, as published in an external local instrument code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalLocalInstrument1Code" on page 277

**4.1.17.1.4.2 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the local instrument, as a proprietary code.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.17.1.5 SequenceType <SeqTp>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the direct debit sequence, such as first, recurrent, final or one-off.

*Datatype:* "SequenceType3Code" on page 283

CodeName	Name	Definition
FRST	First	First collection of a series of direct debit instructions.
RCUR	Recurring	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used for regular direct debit transactions initiated by the creditor.
FNAL	Final	Final collection of a series of direct debit instructions.
OOFF	OneOff	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used to initiate one single direct debit transaction.
RPRE	Represented	Collection used to re-present previously reversed or returned direct debit transactions.

**4.1.17.1.6 CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the high level purpose of the instruction based on a set of pre-defined categories.

Usage: This is used by the initiating party to provide information concerning the processing of the payment. It is likely to trigger special processing by any of the agents involved in the payment chain.

**CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>** contains one of the following **CategoryPurpose1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		181
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		181

**4.1.17.1.6.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Category purpose, as published in an external category purpose code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalCategoryPurpose1Code" on page 273

**4.1.17.1.6.2 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Category purpose, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

## 4.1.18 Person Identification

### 4.1.18.1 PersonIdentification13

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous way to identify a person.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			182
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		182
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		182
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		183
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C7	183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184

#### 4.1.18.1.1 DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and place of birth of a person.

**DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>** contains the following **DateAndPlaceOfBirth1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		182
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		182
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		183
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C7	183

##### 4.1.18.1.1.1 BirthDate <BirthDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date on which a person is born.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 285

##### 4.1.18.1.1.2 ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Province where a person was born.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.18.1.1.3 CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* City where a person was born.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.18.1.1.4 CountryOfBirth <CtrryOfBirth>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Country where a person was born.

*Impacted by:* C7 "Country"

*Datatype:* "CountryCode" on page 270

#### Constraints

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

#### 4.1.18.1.2 Other <Othr>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Unique identification of a person, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

**Other <Othr>** contains the following **GenericPersonIdentification1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184

#### 4.1.18.1.2.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a person.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.18.1.2.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

**SchemeName <SchmeNm>** contains one of the following **PersonIdentificationSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184

#### 4.1.18.1.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalPersonIdentification1Code" on page 278

#### 4.1.18.1.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.18.1.2.3 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

### 4.1.18.2 Contact4

*Definition:* Specifies the details of the contact person.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		185
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		185
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		185
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		186
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		186
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	EmailPurpose <EmailPurp>	[0..1]	Text		186
	JobTitle <JobTitl>	[0..1]	Text		186
	Responsibility <Rspnsblty>	[0..1]	Text		186
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		186
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			186
	ChannelType <ChanlTp>	[1..1]	Text		187
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PreferredMethod <PrefrdMtd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187

#### 4.1.18.2.1 NamePrefix <NmPrfx>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the terms used to formally address a person.

*Datatype:* "NamePrefix2Code" on page 281

CodeName	Name	Definition
DOCT	Doctor	Title of the person is Doctor or Dr.
MADM	Madam	Title of the person is Madam.
MISS	Miss	Title of the person is Miss.
MIST	Mister	Title of the person is Mister or Mr.
MIKS	GenderNeutral	Title of the person is gender neutral (Mx).

#### 4.1.18.2.2 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name by which a party is known and which is usually used to identify that party.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 290

#### 4.1.18.2.3 PhoneNumber <PhneNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Collection of information that identifies a phone number, as defined by telecom services.

*Datatype:* ["PhoneNumber" on page 292](#)

#### **4.1.18.2.4 MobileNumber <MobNb>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Collection of information that identifies a mobile phone number, as defined by telecom services.

*Datatype:* ["PhoneNumber" on page 292](#)

#### **4.1.18.2.5 FaxNumber <FaxNb>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Collection of information that identifies a FAX number, as defined by telecom services.

*Datatype:* ["PhoneNumber" on page 292](#)

#### **4.1.18.2.6 EmailAddress <EmailAdr>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Address for electronic mail (e-mail).

*Datatype:* ["Max2048Text" on page 290](#)

#### **4.1.18.2.7 EmailPurpose <EmailPurp>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Purpose for which an email address may be used.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 291](#)

#### **4.1.18.2.8 JobTitle <JobTitl>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Title of the function.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 291](#)

#### **4.1.18.2.9 Responsibility <Rspnsblty>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Role of a person in an organisation.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 291](#)

#### **4.1.18.2.10 Department <Dept>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a division of a large organisation or building.

*Datatype:* ["Max70Text" on page 291](#)

#### **4.1.18.2.11 Other <Othr>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Contact details in another form.

**Other <Othr>** contains the following **OtherContact1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ChannelType <ChanITp>	[1..1]	Text		187
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		187

#### 4.1.18.2.11.1 ChannelType <ChanITp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Method used to contact the financial institution's contact for the specific tax region.

*Datatype:* "Max4Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.18.2.11.2 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Communication value such as phone number or email address.

*Datatype:* "Max128Text" on page 289

#### 4.1.18.2.12 PreferredMethod <PrefrdMtd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Preferred method used to reach the contact.

*Datatype:* "PreferredContactMethod1Code" on page 282

CodeName	Name	Definition
LETT	Letter	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per letter.
MAIL	Email	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per email.
PHON	Phone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per phone.
FAXX	Fax	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per fax.
CELL	MobileOrCellPhone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per mobile or cell phone.

## 4.1.19 Postal Address

### 4.1.19.1 PostalAddress24

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			188
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		188
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		189
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		189
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		189
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		189
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		189
	BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		190
	PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		190
	Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		190
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		190
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		191
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C7	191
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		191

#### 4.1.19.1.1 AddressType <AdrTp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies the nature of the postal address.

AddressType <AdrTp> contains one of the following AddressType3Choice elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		188
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		189

##### 4.1.19.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of address expressed as a code.

Datatype: "AddressType2Code" on page 269

CodeName	Name	Definition
ADDR	Postal	Address is the complete postal address.

CodeName	Name	Definition
PBOX	POBox	Address is a postal office (PO) box.
HOME	Residential	Address is the home address.
BIZZ	Business	Address is the business address.
MLTO	MailTo	Address is the address to which mail is sent.
DLVY	DeliveryTo	Address is the address to which delivery is to take place.

#### 4.1.19.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of address expressed as a proprietary code.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 71 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		72
	Issuer <Issr>	[1..1]	Text		72
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		72

#### 4.1.19.1.2 Department <Dept>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a division of a large organisation or building.

*Datatype:* "[Max70Text](#)" on page 291

#### 4.1.19.1.3 SubDepartment <SubDept>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a sub-division of a large organisation or building.

*Datatype:* "[Max70Text](#)" on page 291

#### 4.1.19.1.4 StreetName <StrtNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of a street or thoroughfare.

*Datatype:* "[Max70Text](#)" on page 291

#### 4.1.19.1.5 BuildingNumber <BldgNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number that identifies the position of a building on a street.

*Datatype:* "[Max16Text](#)" on page 290

**4.1.19.1.6 BuildingName <BldgNm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the building or house.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.19.1.7 Floor <Flr>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Floor or storey within a building.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 291

**4.1.19.1.8 PostBox <PstBx>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Numbered box in a post office, assigned to a person or organisation, where letters are kept until called for.

*Datatype:* "Max16Text" on page 290

**4.1.19.1.9 Room <Room>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Building room number.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 291

**4.1.19.1.10 PostCode <PstCd>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifier consisting of a group of letters and/or numbers that is added to a postal address to assist the sorting of mail.

*Datatype:* "Max16Text" on page 290

**4.1.19.1.11 TownName <TwnNm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of a built-up area, with defined boundaries, and a local government.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.19.1.12 TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specific location name within the town.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.19.1.13 DistrictName <DstrctNm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies a subdivision within a country sub-division.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.19.1.14 CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies a subdivision of a country such as state, region, county.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.19.1.15 Country <Ctry>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Nation with its own government.

*Impacted by:* C7 "Country"

*Datatype:* "CountryCode" on page 270

##### Constraints

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

#### 4.1.19.1.16 AddressLine <AdrLine>

*Presence:* [0..7]

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services, presented in free format text.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 291

## 4.1.20 Remittance

### 4.1.20.1 Garnishment3

*Definition:* Provides remittance information about a payment for garnishment-related purposes.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]			192
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			192
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		192
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		193
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		193
	Garnishee <Grnshee>	[0..1]	±		193
	GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr>	[0..1]	±		193
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		194
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		194
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	194
	FamilyMedicalInsuranceIndicator <FmlyMdclInsrncInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		194
	EmployeeTerminationIndicator <MplyeeTermntnInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		195

#### 4.1.20.1.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of garnishment.

Type <Tp> contains the following **GarnishmentType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			192
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		192
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		193
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		193

#### 4.1.20.1.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides the type details of the garnishment.

CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry> contains one of the following **GarnishmentType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		192
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		193

#### 4.1.20.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

*Definition:* Garnishment type in a coded form.

Would suggest this to be an External Code List to contain:

GNCS Garnishment from a third party payer for Child Support

GNDP Garnishment from a Direct Payer for Child Support

GTPP Garnishment from a third party payer to taxing agency.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalGarnishmentType1Code" on page 275](#)

#### 4.1.20.1.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary identification of the type of garnishment.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 291](#)

#### 4.1.20.1.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the issuer of the garnishment type.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 291](#)

#### 4.1.20.1.2 Garnishee <Grnshee>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor, in this case, to the garnisher.

**Garnishee <Grnshee>** contains the following elements (see ["PartyIdentification135" on page 175](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		175
	PostalAddress <Pst/Adr>	[0..1]	±		175
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		176
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C7	176
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		177

#### 4.1.20.1.3 GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party on the credit side of the transaction who administers the garnishment on behalf of the ultimate beneficiary.

**GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification135" on page 175 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		175
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		175
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		176
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C7	176
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		177

#### 4.1.20.1.4 ReferenceNumber <RefNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Reference information that is specific to the agency receiving the garnishment.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 290

#### 4.1.20.1.5 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date of payment which garnishment was taken from.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 285

#### 4.1.20.1.6 RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money remitted for the referred document.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.1.20.1.7 FamilyMedicalInsuranceIndicator <FmlyMdcIIInsrncInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates if the person to whom the garnishment applies (that is, the ultimate debtor) has family medical insurance coverage available.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "[TrueFalseIndicator](#)" on page 287):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 4.1.20.1.8 EmployeeTerminationIndicator <MplyeeTermntnInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates if the employment of the person to whom the garnishment applies (that is, the ultimate debtor) has been terminated.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "[TrueFalseIndicator](#)" on page 287):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 4.1.20.2 RemittanceInformation21

*Definition:* Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Unstructured <Ustrd>	[0..*]	Text		195
	Structured <Strd>	[0..*]	±		195

##### 4.1.20.2.1 Unstructured <Ustrd>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system, in an unstructured form.

*Datatype:* "[Max140Text](#)" on page 290

##### 4.1.20.2.2 Structured <Strd>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system, in a structured form.

**Structured <Strd>** contains the following elements (see "[StructuredRemittanceInformation17](#)" on page 217 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInf>	[0..*]			220
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			222
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			222
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		222
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		223
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		223
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		223
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		224
	LineDetails <LineDtls>	[0..*]			224
	Identification <Id>	[1..*]			225
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			226
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			226
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		226
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		226
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		227
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		227
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		227
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		227
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]			227
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	228
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			229
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			229
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		229
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		229
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	229
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	230
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			230
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			230
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		231
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		231

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	231
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			231
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	232
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		232
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		232
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		232
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	233
	ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt>	[0..1]	±		233
	CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtrRefInf>	[0..1]	±		234
	Invoicer <Invcr>	[0..1]	±		235
	Invoicee <Invcee>	[0..1]	±		235
	TaxRemittance <TaxRmt>	[0..1]			236
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		238
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		238
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		238
	AdministrationZone <AdmstrnZone>	[0..1]	Text		239
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		239
	Method <Mtd>	[0..1]	Text		239
	TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	239
	TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	240
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		240
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		240
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]			240
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	Text		241
	Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	Text		241
	CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>	[0..1]	Text		241
	DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>	[0..1]	Text		242
	CertificateIdentification <CertId>	[0..1]	Text		242
	FormsCode <FrmsCd>	[0..1]	Text		242
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]			242
	Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		242

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		242
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		243
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..1]			244
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		244
	TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	244
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	244
	Details <DtIs>	[0..*]			245
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]			245
	Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		245
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		246
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		246
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	247
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		247
	GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt>	[0..1]	±		247
	AdditionalRemittanceInformation <AddtlRmtInf>	[0..3]	Text		248

### 4.1.20.3 StructuredRemittanceInformation16

*Definition:* Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system, in a structured form.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInf>	[0..*]			200
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			202
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			202
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		202
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		203
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		203
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		203
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		204
	LineDetails <LineDtls>	[0..*]			204
	Identification <Id>	[1..*]			205
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			206
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			206
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		206
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		206
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		207
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		207
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		207
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		207
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]			207
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	208
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			209
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			209
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		209
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		209
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	209
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	210
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			210
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			210
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		211
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		211
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	211

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			211
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	212
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		212
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		212
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		212
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	213
	ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt>	[0..1]	±		213
	CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtrRefInf>	[0..1]	±		214
	Invoicer <Invcr>	[0..1]	±		215
	Invoicee <Invcee>	[0..1]	±		215
	TaxRemittance <TaxRmt>	[0..1]	±		216
	GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt>	[0..1]	±		216
	AdditionalRemittanceInformation <AddtlRmtInf>	[0..3]	Text		217

#### 4.1.20.3.1 ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInf>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides the identification and the content of the referred document.

**ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInf>** contains the following  
**ReferredDocumentInformation7** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			202
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			202
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		202
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		203
	Issuer </Issr>	[0..1]	Text		203
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		203
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		204
	LineDetails <LineDtls>	[0..*]			204
	Identification </Id>	[1..*]			205
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			206
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			206
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		206
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		206
	Issuer </Issr>	[0..1]	Text		207
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		207
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		207
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		207
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]			207
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	208
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			209
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			209
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		209
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		209
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	209
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	210
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			210
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			210
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		211
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		211
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	211

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			211
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	212
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		212
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		212
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		212
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	213

#### 4.1.20.3.1.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of referred document.

**Type <Tp>** contains the following **ReferredDocumentType4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			202
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		202
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		203
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		203

#### 4.1.20.3.1.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the type details of the referred document.

**CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>** contains one of the following **ReferredDocumentType3Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		202
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		203

#### 4.1.20.3.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Document type in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "DocumentType6Code" on page 271

CodeName	Name	Definition
MSIN	MeteredServiceInvoice	Document is an invoice claiming payment for the supply of metered services, for example gas or electricity supplied to a fixed meter.

CodeName	Name	Definition
CNFA	CreditNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a credit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
DNFA	DebitNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a debit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
CINV	CommercialInvoice	Document is an invoice.
CREN	CreditNote	Document is a credit note.
DEBN	DebitNote	Document is a debit note.
HIRI	HireInvoice	Document is an invoice for the hiring of human resources or renting goods or equipment.
SBIN	SelfBilledInvoice	Document is an invoice issued by the debtor.
CMCN	CommercialContract	Document is an agreement between the parties, stipulating the terms and conditions of the delivery of goods or services.
SOAC	StatementOfAccount	Document is a statement of the transactions posted to the debtor's account at the supplier.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
BOLD	BillOfLading	Document is a shipping notice.
VCHR	Voucher	Document is an electronic payment document.
AROI	AccountReceivableOpenItem	Document is a payment that applies to a specific source document.
TSUT	TradeServicesUtilityTransaction	Document is a transaction identifier as assigned by the Trade Services Utility.
PUOR	PurchaseOrder	Document is a purchase order.

#### 4.1.20.3.1.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary identification of the type of the remittance document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.20.3.1.1.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the issuer of the reference document type.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.20.3.1.1.2 Number <Nb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the referred document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### **4.1.20.3.1.3 RelatedDate <RltdDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date associated with the referred document.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 285

#### **4.1.20.3.1.4 LineDetails <LineDtIs>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide the content of the referred document line.

**LineDetails <LineDtls>** contains the following **DocumentLineInformation1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..*]			205
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			206
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			206
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		206
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		206
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		207
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		207
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		207
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		207
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]			207
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	208
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			209
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			209
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		209
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		209
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	209
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	210
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			210
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			210
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		211
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		211
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	211
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			211
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	212
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		212
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		212
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		212
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	213

#### 4.1.20.3.1.4.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Provides identification of the document line.

**Identification <Id>** contains the following **DocumentLineIdentification1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			206
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			206
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		206
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		206
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		207
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		207
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		207

#### 4.1.20.3.1.4.1.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of referred document line identification.

**Type <Tp>** contains the following **DocumentLineType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			206
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		206
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		206
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		207

#### 4.1.20.3.1.4.1.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the type details of the referred document line identification.

**CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>** contains one of the following **DocumentLineType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		206
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		206

#### 4.1.20.3.1.4.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Line identification type in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalDocumentLineType1Code" on page 274

#### 4.1.20.3.1.4.1.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary identification of the type of the remittance document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### **4.1.20.3.1.4.1.1.2 Issuer <Issr>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the issuer of the reference document line identificationtype.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### **4.1.20.3.1.4.1.2 Number <Nb>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the type specified for the referred document line.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### **4.1.20.3.1.4.1.3 RelatedDate <RltdDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date associated with the referred document line.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 285

#### **4.1.20.3.1.4.2 Description <Desc>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Description associated with the document line.

*Datatype:* "Max2048Text" on page 290

#### **4.1.20.3.1.4.3 Amount <Amt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the amounts of the document line.

**Amount <Amt>** contains the following **RemittanceAmount3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	208
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			209
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			209
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		209
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		209
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	209
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	210
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			210
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			210
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		211
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		211
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	211
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			211
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	212
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		212
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		212
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		212
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	213

#### 4.1.20.3.1.4.3.1 DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount specified is the exact amount due and payable to the creditor.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**4.1.20.3.1.4.3.2 DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Amount of discount to be applied to the amount due and payable to the creditor.

**DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>** contains the following **DiscountAmountAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			209
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		209
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		209
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	209

**4.1.20.3.1.4.3.2.1 Type <Tp>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of the amount.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **DiscountAmountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		209
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		209

**4.1.20.3.1.4.3.2.1.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalDiscountAmountType1Code" on page 273

**4.1.20.3.1.4.3.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a free-text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.20.3.1.4.3.2.2 Amount <Amt>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money, which has been typed.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**4.1.20.3.1.4.3.3 CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of a credit note.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**4.1.20.3.1.4.3.4 TaxAmount <TaxAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Amount of the tax.

**TaxAmount <TaxAmt>** contains the following **TaxAmountAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			210
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		211
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		211
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	211

**4.1.20.3.1.4.3.4.1 Type <Tp>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of the amount.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **TaxAmountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		211
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		211

#### 4.1.20.3.1.4.3.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalTaxAmountType1Code" on page 280

#### 4.1.20.3.1.4.3.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a free-text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.20.3.1.4.3.4.2 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money, which has been typed.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.1.20.3.1.4.3.5 AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies detailed information on the amount and reason of the adjustment.

**AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>** contains the following **DocumentAdjustment1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	212
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		212
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		212
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		212

#### 4.1.20.3.1.4.3.5.1 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money of the document adjustment.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.1.20.3.1.4.3.5.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the adjustment must be subtracted or added to the total amount.

*Datatype:* "CreditDebitCode" on page 270

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

#### 4.1.20.3.1.4.3.5.3 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the adjustment.

*Datatype:* "Max4Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.20.3.1.4.3.5.4 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides further details on the document adjustment.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 290

#### **4.1.20.3.1.4.3.6 RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money remitted.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

##### **Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### **4.1.20.3.2 ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the amounts of the referred document.

**ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt>** contains the following elements (see "RemittanceAmount2" on page 136 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	136
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			137
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			137
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		137
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		138
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	138
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	138
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			138
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			139
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		139
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	139
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			140
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	140
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		140
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		140
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		141
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	141

#### 4.1.20.3.3 CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtrRefInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Reference information provided by the creditor to allow the identification of the underlying documents.

**CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtrRefInf>** contains the following elements (see "CreditorReferenceInformation2" on page 60 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			61
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			61
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		61
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		62
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		62
	Reference <Ref>	[0..1]	Text		62

#### 4.1.20.3.4 Invoicer <Invcr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the organisation issuing the invoice, when it is different from the creditor or ultimate creditor.

**Invoicer <Invcr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification135" on page 175 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		175
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		175
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		176
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C7	176
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		177

#### 4.1.20.3.5 Invoicee <Invcee>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the party to whom an invoice is issued, when it is different from the debtor or ultimate debtor.

**Invoicee <Invcee>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification135" on page 175 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		175
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		175
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		176
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C7	176
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		177

**4.1.20.3.6 TaxRemittance <TaxRmt>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Provides remittance information about a payment made for tax-related purposes.**TaxRemittance <TaxRmt>** contains the following elements (see "[TaxInformation7](#)" on page 256 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		257
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		257
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		258
	AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>	[0..1]	Text		258
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		258
	Method <Mtd>	[0..1]	Text		258
	TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	258
	TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	259
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		259
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		259
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		259

**4.1.20.3.7 GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Provides remittance information about a payment for garnishment-related purposes.

**GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt>** contains the following elements (see "[Garnishment3](#)" on page 191 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]			192
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			192
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		192
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		193
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		193
	Garnishee <Grnshee>	[0..1]	±		193
	GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr>	[0..1]	±		193
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		194
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		194
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	194
	FamilyMedicalInsuranceIndicator <FmlyMdclInsrnclnd>	[0..1]	Indicator		194
	EmployeeTerminationIndicator <MplyeeTermntnInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		195

#### 4.1.20.3.8 AdditionalRemittanceInformation <AddtlRmtInf>

*Presence:* [0..3]

*Definition:* Additional information, in free text form, to complement the structured remittance information.

*Datatype:* "[Max140Text](#)" on page 290

#### 4.1.20.4 StructuredRemittanceInformation17

*Definition:* Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system, in a structured form.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInf>	[0..*]			220
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			222
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			222
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		222
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		223
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		223
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		223
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		224
	LineDetails <LineDtls>	[0..*]			224
	Identification <Id>	[1..*]			225
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			226
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			226
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		226
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		226
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		227
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		227
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		227
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		227
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]			227
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	228
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			229
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			229
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		229
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		229
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	229
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	230
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			230
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			230
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		231
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		231
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	231

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			231
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	232
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		232
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		232
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		232
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	233
	ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt>	[0..1]	±		233
	CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtrRefInf>	[0..1]	±		234
	Invoicer <Invcr>	[0..1]	±		235
	Invoicee <Invcee>	[0..1]	±		235
	TaxRemittance <TaxRmt>	[0..1]			236
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		238
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		238
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		238
	AdministrationZone <AdmstrnZone>	[0..1]	Text		239
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		239
	Method <Mtd>	[0..1]	Text		239
	TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	239
	TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	240
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		240
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		240
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]			240
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	Text		241
	Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	Text		241
	CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>	[0..1]	Text		241
	DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>	[0..1]	Text		242
	CertificateIdentification <CertId>	[0..1]	Text		242
	FormsCode <FrmsCd>	[0..1]	Text		242
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]			242
	Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		242
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		242

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		243
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..1]			244
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		244
	TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	244
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	244
	Details <Dtls>	[0..*]			245
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]			245
	Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		245
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		246
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		246
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	247
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		247
	GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt>	[0..1]	±		247
	AdditionalRemittanceInformation <AddtlRmtInf>	[0..3]	Text		248

#### 4.1.20.4.1 ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInf>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides the identification and the content of the referred document.

**ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInf>** contains the following  
**ReferredDocumentInformation7** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			222
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			222
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		222
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		223
	Issuer </Issr>	[0..1]	Text		223
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		223
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		224
	LineDetails <LineDtls>	[0..*]			224
	Identification <Id>	[1..*]			225
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			226
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			226
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		226
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		226
	Issuer </Issr>	[0..1]	Text		227
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		227
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		227
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		227
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]			227
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	228
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			229
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			229
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		229
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		229
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	229
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	230
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			230
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			230
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		231
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		231
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	231

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			231
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	232
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		232
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		232
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		232
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	233

#### 4.1.20.4.1.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of referred document.

**Type <Tp>** contains the following **ReferredDocumentType4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			222
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		222
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		223
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		223

#### 4.1.20.4.1.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the type details of the referred document.

**CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>** contains one of the following **ReferredDocumentType3Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		222
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		223

#### 4.1.20.4.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Document type in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "DocumentType6Code" on page 271

CodeName	Name	Definition
MSIN	MeteredServiceInvoice	Document is an invoice claiming payment for the supply of metered services, for example gas or electricity supplied to a fixed meter.

CodeName	Name	Definition
CNFA	CreditNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a credit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
DNFA	DebitNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a debit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
CINV	CommercialInvoice	Document is an invoice.
CREN	CreditNote	Document is a credit note.
DEBN	DebitNote	Document is a debit note.
HIRI	HireInvoice	Document is an invoice for the hiring of human resources or renting goods or equipment.
SBIN	SelfBilledInvoice	Document is an invoice issued by the debtor.
CMCN	CommercialContract	Document is an agreement between the parties, stipulating the terms and conditions of the delivery of goods or services.
SOAC	StatementOfAccount	Document is a statement of the transactions posted to the debtor's account at the supplier.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
BOLD	BillOfLading	Document is a shipping notice.
VCHR	Voucher	Document is an electronic payment document.
AROI	AccountReceivableOpenItem	Document is a payment that applies to a specific source document.
TSUT	TradeServicesUtilityTransaction	Document is a transaction identifier as assigned by the Trade Services Utility.
PUOR	PurchaseOrder	Document is a purchase order.

#### 4.1.20.4.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary identification of the type of the remittance document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.20.4.1.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the issuer of the reference document type.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.20.4.1.2 Number <Nb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the referred document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.20.4.1.3 RelatedDate <RltdDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date associated with the referred document.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 285

**4.1.20.4.1.4 LineDetails <LineDtIs>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide the content of the referred document line.

**LineDetails <LineDtls>** contains the following **DocumentLineInformation1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..*]			225
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			226
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			226
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		226
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		226
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		227
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		227
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		227
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		227
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]			227
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	228
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			229
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			229
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		229
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		229
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	229
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	230
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			230
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			230
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		231
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		231
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	231
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			231
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	232
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		232
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		232
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		232
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	233

#### 4.1.20.4.1.4.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Provides identification of the document line.

**Identification <Id>** contains the following **DocumentLineIdentification1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			226
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			226
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		226
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		226
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		227
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		227
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		227

#### 4.1.20.4.1.4.1.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of referred document line identification.

**Type <Tp>** contains the following **DocumentLineType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			226
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		226
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		226
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		227

#### 4.1.20.4.1.4.1.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the type details of the referred document line identification.

**CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>** contains one of the following **DocumentLineType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		226
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		226

#### 4.1.20.4.1.4.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Line identification type in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalDocumentLineType1Code" on page 274

#### 4.1.20.4.1.4.1.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary identification of the type of the remittance document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### **4.1.20.4.1.4.1.1.2 Issuer <Issr>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the issuer of the reference document line identificationtype.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### **4.1.20.4.1.4.1.2 Number <Nb>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the type specified for the referred document line.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### **4.1.20.4.1.4.1.3 RelatedDate <RltdDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date associated with the referred document line.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 285

#### **4.1.20.4.1.4.2 Description <Desc>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Description associated with the document line.

*Datatype:* "Max2048Text" on page 290

#### **4.1.20.4.1.4.3 Amount <Amt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the amounts of the document line.

**Amount <Amt>** contains the following **RemittanceAmount3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	228
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			229
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			229
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		229
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		229
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	229
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	230
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			230
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			230
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		231
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		231
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	231
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			231
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	232
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		232
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		232
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		232
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	233

#### 4.1.20.4.1.4.3.1 DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount specified is the exact amount due and payable to the creditor.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**4.1.20.4.1.4.3.2 DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Amount of discount to be applied to the amount due and payable to the creditor.

**DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>** contains the following **DiscountAmountAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			229
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		229
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		229
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	229

**4.1.20.4.1.4.3.2.1 Type <Tp>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of the amount.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **DiscountAmountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		229
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		229

**4.1.20.4.1.4.3.2.1.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalDiscountAmountType1Code" on page 273

**4.1.20.4.1.4.3.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a free-text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.20.4.1.4.3.2.2 Amount <Amt>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money, which has been typed.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**4.1.20.4.1.4.3.3 CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of a credit note.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**4.1.20.4.1.4.3.4 TaxAmount <TaxAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Amount of the tax.

**TaxAmount <TaxAmt>** contains the following **TaxAmountAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			230
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		231
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		231
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	231

**4.1.20.4.1.4.3.4.1 Type <Tp>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of the amount.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **TaxAmountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		231
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		231

#### 4.1.20.4.1.4.3.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalTaxAmountType1Code" on page 280

#### 4.1.20.4.1.4.3.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a free-text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.20.4.1.4.3.4.2 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money, which has been typed.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.1.20.4.1.4.3.5 AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies detailed information on the amount and reason of the adjustment.

**AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>** contains the following **DocumentAdjustment1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	232
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		232
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		232
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		232

#### 4.1.20.4.1.4.3.5.1 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money of the document adjustment.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.1.20.4.1.4.3.5.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the adjustment must be subtracted or added to the total amount.

*Datatype:* "CreditDebitCode" on page 270

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

#### 4.1.20.4.1.4.3.5.3 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the adjustment.

*Datatype:* "Max4Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.20.4.1.4.3.5.4 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides further details on the document adjustment.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 290

#### **4.1.20.4.1.4.3.6 RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money remitted.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

#### **Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### **4.1.20.4.2 ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the amounts of the referred document.

**ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt>** contains the following elements (see "RemittanceAmount2" on page 136 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	136
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			137
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			137
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		137
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		138
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	138
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	138
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			138
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			139
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		139
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	139
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			140
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	140
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		140
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		140
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		141
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	141

#### 4.1.20.4.3 CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtrRefInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Reference information provided by the creditor to allow the identification of the underlying documents.

**CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtrRefInf>** contains the following elements (see "CreditorReferenceInformation2" on page 60 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			61
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			61
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		61
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		62
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		62
	Reference <Ref>	[0..1]	Text		62

#### 4.1.20.4.4 Invoicer <Invcr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the organisation issuing the invoice, when it is different from the creditor or ultimate creditor.

**Invoicer <Invcr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification135" on page 175 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		175
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		175
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		176
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C7	176
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		177

#### 4.1.20.4.5 Invoicee <Invcee>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the party to whom an invoice is issued, when it is different from the debtor or ultimate debtor.

**Invoicee <Invcee>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification135" on page 175 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		175
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		175
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		176
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C7	176
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		177

#### **4.1.20.4.6 TaxRemittance <TaxRmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides remittance information about a payment made for tax-related purposes.

**TaxRemittance <TaxRmt>** contains the following **TaxData1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		238
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		238
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		238
	AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>	[0..1]	Text		239
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		239
	Method <Mtd>	[0..1]	Text		239
	TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	239
	TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	240
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		240
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		240
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]			240
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	Text		241
	Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	Text		241
	CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>	[0..1]	Text		241
	DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>	[0..1]	Text		242
	CertificateIdentification <CertId>	[0..1]	Text		242
	FormsCode <FrmsCd>	[0..1]	Text		242
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]			242
	Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		242
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		242
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		243
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..1]			244
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		244
	TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	244
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	244
	Details <Dtls>	[0..*]			245
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]			245
	Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		245
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		246
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		246
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	247

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		247

#### 4.1.20.4.6.1 Creditor <Cdtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party on the credit side of the transaction to which the tax applies.

**Creditor <Cdtr>** contains the following elements (see "[TaxParty1](#)" on page 260 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		260
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		260
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		260

#### 4.1.20.4.6.2 Debtor <Dbtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party on the debit side of the transaction to which the tax applies.

**Debtor <Dbtr>** contains the following elements (see "[TaxParty2](#)" on page 255 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		255
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		255
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		256
	Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..1]			256
	Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		256
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		256

#### 4.1.20.4.6.3 UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor, in this case, to the taxing authority.

**UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>** contains the following elements (see "[TaxParty2](#)" on page 255 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		255
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		255
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		256
	Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..1]			256
	Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		256
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		256

#### 4.1.20.4.6.4 AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Territorial part of a country to which the tax payment is related.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 291

#### 4.1.20.4.6.5 ReferenceNumber <RefNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Tax reference information that is specific to a taxing agency.

*Datatype:* "[Max140Text](#)" on page 290

#### 4.1.20.4.6.6 Method <Mtd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Method used to indicate the underlying business or how the tax is paid.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 291

#### 4.1.20.4.6.7 TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtITaxblBaseAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of money on which the tax is based.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C8 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* "[ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 267

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.1.20.4.6.8 TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of money as result of the calculation of the tax.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.1.20.4.6.9 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date by which tax is due.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 285

#### 4.1.20.4.6.10 SequenceNumber <SeqNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Sequential number of the tax report.

*Datatype:* "Number" on page 288

#### 4.1.20.4.6.11 Record <Rcrd>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Record of tax details.

**Record <Rcrd>** contains the following **TaxRecord3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	Text		241
	Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	Text		241
	CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>	[0..1]	Text		241
	DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>	[0..1]	Text		242
	CertificateIdentification <CertId>	[0..1]	Text		242
	FormsCode <FrmsCd>	[0..1]	Text		242
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]			242
	Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		242
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		242
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		243
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..1]			244
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		244
	TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	244
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	244
	Details <Dtls>	[0..*]			245
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]			245
	Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		245
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		246
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		246
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	247
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		247

#### 4.1.20.4.6.11.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* High level code to identify the type of tax details.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.20.4.6.11.2 Category <Ctgy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the tax code as published by the tax authority.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.20.4.6.11.3 CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides further details of the category tax code.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.20.4.6.11.4 DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Code provided by local authority to identify the status of the party that has drawn up the settlement document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.20.4.6.11.5 CertificateIdentification <CertId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification number of the tax report as assigned by the taxing authority.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.20.4.6.11.6 FormsCode <FrmsCd>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies, in a coded form, on which template the tax report is to be provided.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.20.4.6.11.7 Period <Prd>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the period of time related to the tax payment.

**Period <Prd>** contains the following **TaxPeriod3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		242
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		242
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		243

**4.1.20.4.6.11.7.1 Year <Yr>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Year related to the tax payment.

*Datatype:* "ISOYear" on page 292

**4.1.20.4.6.11.7.2 Type <Tp>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the period related to the tax payment.

*Datatype:* "TaxRecordPeriod1Code" on page 284

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM01	FirstMonth	Tax is related to the second month of the period.

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM02	SecondMonth	Tax is related to the first month of the period.
MM03	ThirdMonth	Tax is related to the third month of the period.
MM04	FourthMonth	Tax is related to the fourth month of the period.
MM05	FifthMonth	Tax is related to the fifth month of the period.
MM06	SixthMonth	Tax is related to the sixth month of the period.
MM07	SeventhMonth	Tax is related to the seventh month of the period.
MM08	EighthMonth	Tax is related to the eighth month of the period.
MM09	NinthMonth	Tax is related to the ninth month of the period.
MM10	TenthMonth	Tax is related to the tenth month of the period.
MM11	EleventhMonth	Tax is related to the eleventh month of the period.
MM12	TwelfthMonth	Tax is related to the twelfth month of the period.
QTR1	FirstQuarter	Tax is related to the first quarter of the period.
QTR2	SecondQuarter	Tax is related to the second quarter of the period.
QTR3	ThirdQuarter	Tax is related to the third quarter of the period.
QTR4	FourthQuarter	Tax is related to the forth quarter of the period.
HLF1	FirstHalf	Tax is related to the first half of the period.
HLF2	SecondHalf	Tax is related to the second half of the period.

#### 4.1.20.4.6.11.7.3 FromToDate <FrToDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Range of time between a start date and an end date for which the tax report is provided.

**FromToDate <FrToDt>** contains the following elements (see "[DatePeriod2](#)" on page 52 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		53
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		53

**4.1.20.4.6.11.8 TaxAmount <TaxAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide information on the amount of the tax record.

**TaxAmount <TaxAmt>** contains the following **TaxAmount3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		244
	TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	244
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	244
	Details <Dtls>	[0..*]			245
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]			245
	Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		245
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		246
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		246
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	247

**4.1.20.4.6.11.8.1 Rate <Rate>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Rate used to calculate the tax.

*Datatype:* "PercentageRate" on page 288

**4.1.20.4.6.11.8.2 TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money on which the tax is based.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**4.1.20.4.6.11.8.3 TotalAmount <TtlAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total amount that is the result of the calculation of the tax for the record.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**4.1.20.4.6.11.8.4 Details <DtIs>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the tax period and amount.

**Details <DtIs>** contains the following **TaxRecordDetails3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]			245
	Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		245
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		246
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		246
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	247

**4.1.20.4.6.11.8.4.1 Period <Prd>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the period of time related to the tax payment.

**Period <Prd>** contains the following **TaxPeriod3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		245
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		246
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		246

**4.1.20.4.6.11.8.4.1.1 Year <Yr>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Year related to the tax payment.

*Datatype:* "ISOYear" on page 292

#### 4.1.20.4.6.11.8.4.1.2 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the period related to the tax payment.

*Datatype:* "TaxRecordPeriod1Code" on page 284

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM01	FirstMonth	Tax is related to the second month of the period.
MM02	SecondMonth	Tax is related to the first month of the period.
MM03	ThirdMonth	Tax is related to the third month of the period.
MM04	FourthMonth	Tax is related to the fourth month of the period.
MM05	FifthMonth	Tax is related to the fifth month of the period.
MM06	SixthMonth	Tax is related to the sixth month of the period.
MM07	SeventhMonth	Tax is related to the seventh month of the period.
MM08	EighthMonth	Tax is related to the eighth month of the period.
MM09	NinthMonth	Tax is related to the ninth month of the period.
MM10	TenthMonth	Tax is related to the tenth month of the period.
MM11	EleventhMonth	Tax is related to the eleventh month of the period.
MM12	TwelfthMonth	Tax is related to the twelfth month of the period.
QTR1	FirstQuarter	Tax is related to the first quarter of the period.
QTR2	SecondQuarter	Tax is related to the second quarter of the period.
QTR3	ThirdQuarter	Tax is related to the third quarter of the period.
QTR4	FourthQuarter	Tax is related to the forth quarter of the period.
HLF1	FirstHalf	Tax is related to the first half of the period.
HLF2	SecondHalf	Tax is related to the second half of the period.

#### 4.1.20.4.6.11.8.4.1.3 FromToDate <FrToDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Range of time between a start date and an end date for which the tax report is provided.

**FromToDate <FrToDt>** contains the following elements (see ["DatePeriod2"](#) on page 52 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		53
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		53

#### 4.1.20.4.6.11.8.4.2 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Underlying tax amount related to the specified period.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C8 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 267

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.1.20.4.6.11.9 AdditionalInformation <Addtllnf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Further details of the tax record.

*Datatype:* ["Max140Text"](#) on page 290

#### 4.1.20.4.7 GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides remittance information about a payment for garnishment-related purposes.

**GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt>** contains the following elements (see "[Garnishment3](#)" on page 191 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]			192
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			192
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		192
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		193
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		193
	Garnishee <Grnshee>	[0..1]	±		193
	GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr>	[0..1]	±		193
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		194
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		194
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	194
	FamilyMedicalInsuranceIndicator <FmlyMdclInsrnclnd>	[0..1]	Indicator		194
	EmployeeTerminationIndicator <MplyeeTermntnInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		195

#### 4.1.20.4.8 AdditionalRemittanceInformation <AddtlRmtInf>

*Presence:* [0..3]

*Definition:* Additional information, in free text form, to complement the structured remittance information.

*Datatype:* "[Max140Text](#)" on page 290

#### 4.1.20.5 RemittanceLocation7

*Definition:* Provides information on the remittance advice.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	RemittanceIdentification <Rmtld>	[0..1]	Text		248
	RemittanceLocationDetails <RmtLctnDtls>	[0..*]	±		248

##### 4.1.20.5.1 RemittanceIdentification <Rmtld>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the initiating party, to unambiguously identify the remittance information sent separately from the payment instruction, such as a remittance advice.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 291

##### 4.1.20.5.2 RemittanceLocationDetails <RmtLctnDtls>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide information on the location and/or delivery of the remittance information.

**RemittanceLocationDetails <RmtLctnDtls>** contains the following elements (see "RemittanceLocationData1" on page 249 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Method <Mtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		249
	ElectronicAddress <ElctrcAdr>	[0..1]	Text		250
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]			250
	Name <Nm>	[1..1]	Text		250
	Address <Adr>	[1..1]	±		250

#### 4.1.20.6 RemittanceLocationData1

*Definition:* Provides additional details on the remittance advice.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Method <Mtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		249
	ElectronicAddress <ElctrcAdr>	[0..1]	Text		250
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]			250
	Name <Nm>	[1..1]	Text		250
	Address <Adr>	[1..1]	±		250

##### 4.1.20.6.1 Method <Mtd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Method used to deliver the remittance advice information.

*Datatype:* "RemittanceLocationMethod2Code" on page 283

CodeName	Name	Definition
FAXI	Fax	Remittance advice information must be faxed.
EDIC	ElectronicDataInterchange	Remittance advice information must be sent through Electronic Data Interchange (EDI).
URID	UniformResourceIdentifier	Remittance advice information needs to be sent to a Uniform Resource Identifier (URI). URI is a compact string of characters that uniquely identify an abstract or physical resource. URI's are the super-set of identifiers, such as URLs, email addresses, ftp sites, etc, and as such, provide the syntax for all of the identification schemes.
EMAL	EMail	Remittance advice information must be sent through e-mail.
POST	Post	Remittance advice information must be sent through postal services.

CodeName	Name	Definition
SMSM	SMS	Remittance advice information must be sent through by phone as a short message service (SMS).

**4.1.20.6.2 ElectronicAddress <ElctrncAdr>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Electronic address to which an agent is to send the remittance information.

*Datatype:* "Max2048Text" on page 290

**4.1.20.6.3 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Postal address to which an agent is to send the remittance information.

**PostalAddress <PstlAdr>** contains the following **NameAndAddress16** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[1..1]	Text		250
	Address <Adr>	[1..1]	±		250

**4.1.20.6.3.1 Name <Nm>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name by which a party is known and is usually used to identify that party.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 290

**4.1.20.6.3.2 Address <Adr>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Postal address of a party.

**Address <Adr>** contains the following elements (see "PostalAddress24" on page 187 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			188
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		188
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		189
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		189
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		189
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		189
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		189
	BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		190
	PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		190
	Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		190
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		190
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		191
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C7	191
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		191

## 4.1.21 Status

### 4.1.21.1 StatusReasonInformation12

*Definition:* Provides information on the status reason of the transaction.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Originator <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		252
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			252
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		252
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		252
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		253

**Constraints**

- **StatusReasonRule**

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AdditionalInformation must be present.

On Condition

/Reason/Code is within DataType <<Code>> ValidationRuleNarrative1Code

And /Reason is present

And /Reason/Code is present

Following Must be True

/AdditionalInformation[1] Must be present

**4.1.21.1.1 Originator <Orgtr>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that issues the status.

**Originator <Orgtr>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification135](#)" on page 175 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		175
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		175
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		176
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C7	176
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		177

**4.1.21.1.2 Reason <Rsn>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the status report.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains one of the following **StatusReason6Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		252
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		252

**4.1.21.1.2.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the status, as published in an external reason code list.

*Datatype:* "[ExternalStatusReason1Code](#)" on page 280

**4.1.21.1.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the status, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 291

#### 4.1.21.1.3 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Further details on the status reason.

*Usage:* Additional information can be used for several purposes such as the reporting of repaired information.

*Datatype:* "Max105Text" on page 289

#### 4.1.21.2 InvestigationActionReason1

*Definition:* Provides information on the action reason.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Originator <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		253
	Reason <Rsn>	[1..1]			254
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		254
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		254
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		254

#### Constraints

- **StatusReasonRule**

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AdditionalInformation must be present.

On Condition

/Reason/Code is within DataType <<Code>> ValidationRuleNarrative1Code

And /Reason is present

And /Reason/Code is present

Following Must be True

/AdditionalInformation[1] Must be present

#### 4.1.21.2.1 Originator <Orgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that requests the action.

**Originator <Orgtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification135" on page 175 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		175
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		175
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		176
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C7	176
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		177

**4.1.21.2.2 Reason <Rsn>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the action.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains one of the following **InvestigationActionReason1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		254
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		254

**4.1.21.2.2.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the action, as published in an external investigation action reason code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalInvestigationActionReason1Code" on page 275

**4.1.21.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the action, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

**4.1.21.2.3 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Further details on the action reason.

*Datatype:* "Max105Text" on page 289

**4.1.21.3 CancellationReason33Choice**

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the cancellation request.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		254
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		254

**4.1.21.3.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the cancellation request, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalCancellationReason1Code" on page 272

**4.1.21.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the cancellation request, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

## 4.1.22 System Identification

### 4.1.22.1 ClearingSystemIdentification2Choice

*Definition:* Choice of a clearing system identifier.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		255
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		255

#### 4.1.22.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a clearing system, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalClearingSystemIdentification1Code" on page 273

#### 4.1.22.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification code for a clearing system, that has not yet been identified in the list of clearing systems.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

## 4.1.23 Tax

### 4.1.23.1 TaxParty2

*Definition:* Details about the entity involved in the tax paid or to be paid.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		255
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		255
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		256
	Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..1]			256
	Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		256
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		256

#### 4.1.23.1.1 TaxIdentification <TaxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Tax identification number of the debtor.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.23.1.2 RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by an organisation, to unambiguously identify a party.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.23.1.3 TaxType <TaxTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Type of tax payer.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.23.1.4 Authorisation <Authstn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Details of the authorised tax paying party.

**Authorisation <Authstn>** contains the following **TaxAuthorisation1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		256
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		256

##### 4.1.23.1.4.1 Title <Titl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Title or position of debtor or the debtor's authorised representative.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

##### 4.1.23.1.4.2 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the debtor or the debtor's authorised representative.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 290

#### 4.1.23.2 TaxInformation7

*Definition:* Details about tax paid, or to be paid, to the government in accordance with the law, including pre-defined parameters such as thresholds and type of account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		257
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		257
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		258
	AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>	[0..1]	Text		258
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		258
	Method <Mtd>	[0..1]	Text		258
	TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	258
	TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	259
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		259
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		259
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		259

#### 4.1.23.2.1 Creditor <Cdtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party on the credit side of the transaction to which the tax applies.

**Creditor <Cdtr>** contains the following elements (see "[TaxParty1](#)" on page 260 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		260
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		260
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		260

#### 4.1.23.2.2 Debtor <Dbtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the party on the debit side of the transaction to which the tax applies.

**Debtor <Dbtr>** contains the following elements (see "[TaxParty2](#)" on page 255 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		255
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		255
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		256
	Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..1]			256
	Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		256
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		256

**4.1.23.2.3 UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor, in this case, to the taxing authority.

**UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>** contains the following elements (see "[TaxParty2](#)" on page 255 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		255
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		255
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		256
	Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..1]			256
	Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		256
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		256

**4.1.23.2.4 AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Territorial part of a country to which the tax payment is related.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 291

**4.1.23.2.5 ReferenceNumber <RefNb>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Tax reference information that is specific to a taxing agency.

*Datatype:* "[Max140Text](#)" on page 290

**4.1.23.2.6 Method <Mtd>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Method used to indicate the underlying business or how the tax is paid.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 291

**4.1.23.2.7 TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of money on which the tax is based.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C8 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* "[ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 267

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3)

contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.1.23.2.8 TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of money as result of the calculation of the tax.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.1.23.2.9 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date by which tax is due.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 285

#### 4.1.23.2.10 SequenceNumber <SeqNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Sequential number of the tax report.

*Datatype:* "Number" on page 288

#### 4.1.23.2.11 Record <Rcrd>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Record of tax details.

**Record <Rcrd>** contains the following elements (see ["TaxRecord2"](#) on page 261 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	Text		262
	Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	Text		262
	CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>	[0..1]	Text		262
	DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>	[0..1]	Text		262
	CertificateIdentification <CertId>	[0..1]	Text		262
	FormsCode <FrmsCd>	[0..1]	Text		263
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		263
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..1]			263
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		263
	TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	263
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	264
	Details <Dtls>	[0..*]	±		264
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		264

#### 4.1.23.3 TaxParty1

*Definition:* Details about the entity involved in the tax paid or to be paid.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		260
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		260
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		260

##### 4.1.23.3.1 TaxIdentification <TaxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Tax identification number of the creditor.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text"](#) on page 291

##### 4.1.23.3.2 RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by an organisation, to unambiguously identify a party.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text"](#) on page 291

##### 4.1.23.3.3 TaxType <TaxTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Type of tax payer.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.23.4 TaxRecordDetails2

*Definition:* Provides information on the individual tax amount(s) per period of the tax record.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		261
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	261

##### 4.1.23.4.1 Period <Prd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the period of time related to the tax payment.

**Period <Prd>** contains the following elements (see "TaxPeriod2" on page 265 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Date		265
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		265
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		266

##### 4.1.23.4.2 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Underlying tax amount related to the specified period.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.1.23.5 TaxRecord2

*Definition:* Set of elements used to define the tax record.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	Text		262
	Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	Text		262
	CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>	[0..1]	Text		262
	DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>	[0..1]	Text		262
	CertificateIdentification <CertId>	[0..1]	Text		262
	FormsCode <FrmsCd>	[0..1]	Text		263
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		263
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..1]			263
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		263
	TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	263
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	264
	Details <Dtls>	[0..*]	±		264
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		264

#### 4.1.23.5.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* High level code to identify the type of tax details.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.23.5.2 Category <Ctgy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the tax code as published by the tax authority.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.23.5.3 CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides further details of the category tax code.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.23.5.4 DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Code provided by local authority to identify the status of the party that has drawn up the settlement document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.23.5.5 CertificateIdentification <CertId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification number of the tax report as assigned by the taxing authority.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.23.5.6 FormsCode <FrmsCd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies, in a coded form, on which template the tax report is to be provided.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 291

#### 4.1.23.5.7 Period <Prd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the period of time related to the tax payment.

**Period <Prd>** contains the following elements (see "TaxPeriod2" on page 265 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Date		265
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		265
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		266

#### 4.1.23.5.8 TaxAmount <TaxAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide information on the amount of the tax record.

**TaxAmount <TaxAmt>** contains the following **TaxAmount2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		263
	TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	263
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C8	264
	Details <Dtls>	[0..*]	±		264

##### 4.1.23.5.8.1 Rate <Rate>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Rate used to calculate the tax.

*Datatype:* "PercentageRate" on page 288

##### 4.1.23.5.8.2 TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money on which the tax is based.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**4.1.23.5.8.3 TotalAmount <TtlAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total amount that is the result of the calculation of the tax for the record.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 267

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**4.1.23.5.8.4 Details <DtIs>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the tax period and amount.

**Details <DtIs>** contains the following elements (see "TaxRecordDetails2" on page 261 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		261
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C8	261

**4.1.23.5.9 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Further details of the tax record.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 290

### 4.1.23.6 TaxPeriod2

*Definition:* Period of time details related to the tax payment.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Date		265
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		265
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		266

#### 4.1.23.6.1 Year <Yr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Year related to the tax payment.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 285

#### 4.1.23.6.2 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the period related to the tax payment.

*Datatype:* "TaxRecordPeriod1Code" on page 284

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM01	FirstMonth	Tax is related to the second month of the period.
MM02	SecondMonth	Tax is related to the first month of the period.
MM03	ThirdMonth	Tax is related to the third month of the period.
MM04	FourthMonth	Tax is related to the fourth month of the period.
MM05	FifthMonth	Tax is related to the fifth month of the period.
MM06	SixthMonth	Tax is related to the sixth month of the period.
MM07	SeventhMonth	Tax is related to the seventh month of the period.
MM08	EighthMonth	Tax is related to the eighth month of the period.
MM09	NinthMonth	Tax is related to the ninth month of the period.
MM10	TenthMonth	Tax is related to the tenth month of the period.
MM11	EleventhMonth	Tax is related to the eleventh month of the period.
MM12	TwelfthMonth	Tax is related to the twelfth month of the period.

CodeName	Name	Definition
QTR1	FirstQuarter	Tax is related to the first quarter of the period.
QTR2	SecondQuarter	Tax is related to the second quarter of the period.
QTR3	ThirdQuarter	Tax is related to the third quarter of the period.
QTR4	FourthQuarter	Tax is related to the forth quarter of the period.
HLF1	FirstHalf	Tax is related to the first half of the period.
HLF2	SecondHalf	Tax is related to the second half of the period.

#### 4.1.23.6.3 FromToDate <FrToDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Range of time between a start date and an end date for which the tax report is provided.

FromToDate <FrToDt> contains the following elements (see "DatePeriod2" on page 52 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		53
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		53

## 4.2 Message Datatypes

### 4.2.1 Amount

#### 4.2.1.1 ActiveCurrencyAndAmount

Definition: A number of monetary units specified in an active currency where the unit of currency is explicit and compliant with ISO 4217.

Type: Amount

This data type contains the following XML attribute:

Name	Attribute XML Name	Datatype
Currency	Ccy	"ActiveCurrencyCode" on page 268

#### Format

minInclusive	0
totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	5

**Constraints**

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**4.2.1.2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount**

*Definition:* A number of monetary units specified in an active or a historic currency where the unit of currency is explicit and compliant with ISO 4217.

*Type:* Amount

This data type contains the following XML attribute:

Name	Attribute XML Name	Datatype
Currency	Ccy	"ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 268

**Format**

minInclusive	0
totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	5

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**4.2.2 Binary**

**4.2.2.1 Max10KBinary**

*Definition:* Binary data of 10K maximum.

*Type:* Binary

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	10240

**4.2.2.2 Max10MbBinary**

*Definition:* Binary data of 10 megabytes (10 Mb) maximum.

*Type:* Binary

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	10485760

**4.2.3 CodeSet****4.2.3.1 ActiveCurrencyCode**

*Definition:* A code allocated to a currency by a Maintenance Agency under an international identification scheme as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 4217 "Codes for the representation of currencies and funds".

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

pattern	[A-Z]{3,3}
---------	------------

**Constraints**

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**4.2.3.2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode**

*Definition:* A code allocated to a currency by a Maintenance Agency under an international identification scheme, as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 4217 "Codes for the representation of currencies and funds".

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

pattern	[A-Z]{3,3}
---------	------------

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3)

contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 4.2.3.3 AddressType2Code

*Definition:* Specifies the type of address.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
ADDR	Postal	Address is the complete postal address.
PBOX	POBox	Address is a postal office (PO) box.
HOME	Residential	Address is the home address.
BIZZ	Business	Address is the business address.
MLTO	MailTo	Address is the address to which mail is sent.
DLVY	DeliveryTo	Address is the address to which delivery is to take place.

#### 4.2.3.4 ChargeBearerType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies which party(ies) will pay charges due for processing of the instruction.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
DEBT	BorneByDebtor	All transaction charges are to be borne by the debtor.
CRED	BorneByCreditor	All transaction charges are to be borne by the creditor.
SHAR	Shared	In a credit transfer context, means that transaction charges on the sender side are to be borne by the debtor, transaction charges on the receiver side are to be borne by the creditor. In a direct debit context, means that transaction charges on the sender side are to be borne by the creditor, transaction charges on the receiver side are to be borne by the debtor.
SLEV	FollowingServiceLevel	Charges are to be applied following the rules agreed in the service level and/or scheme.

#### 4.2.3.5 ClearingChannel2Code

*Definition:* Specifies the clearing channel for the routing of the transaction, as part of the payment type identification.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
RTGS	RealTimeGrossSettlementSystem	Clearing channel is a real-time gross settlement system.

CodeName	Name	Definition
RTNS	RealTimeNetSettlementSystem	Clearing channel is a real-time net settlement system.
MPNS	MassPaymentNetSystem	Clearing channel is a mass payment net settlement system.
BOOK	BookTransfer	Payment through internal book transfer.

#### 4.2.3.6 CountryCode

*Definition:* Code to identify a country, a dependency, or another area of particular geopolitical interest, on the basis of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

*Type:* CodeSet

##### Format

pattern [A-Z]{2,2}

##### Constraints

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

#### 4.2.3.7 CreditDebitCode

*Definition:* Specifies if an operation is an increase or a decrease.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

#### 4.2.3.8 DocumentType3Code

*Definition:* Specifies a type of financial or commercial document.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
RADM	RemittanceAdviceMessage	Document is a remittance advice sent separately from the current transaction.
RPIN	RelatedPaymentInstruction	Document is a linked payment instruction to which the current payment instruction is related, for example, in a cover scenario.
FXDR	ForeignExchangeDealReference	Document is a pre-agreed or pre-arranged foreign exchange transaction to which the payment transaction refers.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
PUOR	PurchaseOrder	Document is a purchase order.

CodeName	Name	Definition
SCOR	StructuredCommunicationReference	Document is a structured communication reference provided by the creditor to identify the referred transaction.

#### 4.2.3.9 DocumentType6Code

*Definition:* Specifies a type of financial or commercial document.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MSIN	MeteredServiceInvoice	Document is an invoice claiming payment for the supply of metered services, for example gas or electricity supplied to a fixed meter.
CNFA	CreditNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a credit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
DNFA	DebitNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a debit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
CINV	CommercialInvoice	Document is an invoice.
CREN	CreditNote	Document is a credit note.
DEBN	DebitNote	Document is a debit note.
HIRI	HireInvoice	Document is an invoice for the hiring of human resources or renting goods or equipment.
SBIN	SelfBilledInvoice	Document is an invoice issued by the debtor.
CMCN	CommercialContract	Document is an agreement between the parties, stipulating the terms and conditions of the delivery of goods or services.
SOAC	StatementOfAccount	Document is a statement of the transactions posted to the debtor's account at the supplier.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
BOLD	BillOfLading	Document is a shipping notice.
VCHR	Voucher	Document is an electronic payment document.
AROJ	AccountReceivableOpenItem	Document is a payment that applies to a specific source document.
TSUT	TradeServicesUtilityTransaction	Document is a transaction identifier as assigned by the Trade Services Utility.
PUOR	PurchaseOrder	Document is a purchase order.

#### 4.2.3.10 ExternalAccountIdentification1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the external account identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

##### Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

#### 4.2.3.11 ExternalCancellationReason1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the cancellation reason, as published in an external cancellation reason code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

##### Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

#### 4.2.3.12 ExternalCashAccountType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the nature, or use, of the cash account in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

##### Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

#### 4.2.3.13 ExternalCashClearingSystem1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the cash clearing system, as published in an external cash clearing system code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	3

**4.2.3.14 ExternalCategoryPurpose1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the category purpose, as published in an external category purpose code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**4.2.3.15 ExternalChargeType1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the nature, or use, of the charges in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**4.2.3.16 ExternalClearingSystemIdentification1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the clearing system identification code, as published in an external clearing system identification code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	5

**4.2.3.17 ExternalDiscountAmountType1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the nature, or use, of the amount in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

#### 4.2.3.18 ExternalDocumentFormat1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the external document format code in the format of a character string with a maximum length of 4 characters. The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

#### 4.2.3.19 ExternalDocumentLineType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the document line type as published in an external document type code list.

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

#### 4.2.3.20 ExternalDocumentType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the document type as published in an external document type code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

#### 4.2.3.21 ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentification1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the external financial institution identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

#### 4.2.3.22 ExternalGarnishmentType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the garnishment type as published in an external document type code list.

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

#### 4.2.3.23 ExternalInvestigationAction1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the requested action, as published in an external investigation action code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

#### 4.2.3.24 ExternalInvestigationActionReason1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the requested action, as published in an external investigation action code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

#### 4.2.3.25 ExternalInvestigationInstrument1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the type of instrument or product to which the investigation refers, as published in an external investigation instrument code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**4.2.3.26 ExternalInvestigationReason1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the investigation reason, as published in an external investigation reason code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**4.2.3.27 ExternalInvestigationReasonSubType1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the investigation reason sub type, as published in an external investigation reason code sub type set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**4.2.3.28 ExternalInvestigationServiceLevel1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the investigation service level, as published in an external investigation service level code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**4.2.3.29 ExternalInvestigationStatus1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the investigation status, as published in an external investigation status code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**4.2.3.30 ExternalInvestigationStatusReason1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the investigation status, as published in an external investigation status reason code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**4.2.3.31 ExternalInvestigationSubType1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the investigation sub type, as published in an external investigation sub type code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**4.2.3.32 ExternalInvestigationType1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the investigation type, as published in an external investigation type code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**4.2.3.33 ExternalLocalInstrument1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external local instrument code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 35 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	35

**4.2.3.34 ExternalMandateSetupReason1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external mandate setup reason code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**4.2.3.35 ExternalOrganisationIdentification1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external organisation identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**4.2.3.36 ExternalPaymentTransactionStatus1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the status of an individual payment instructions, as published in an external payment transaction status code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**4.2.3.37 ExternalPersonIdentification1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external person identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

#### 4.2.3.38 ExternalProxyAccountType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the external proxy account type code, as published in the proxy account type external code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

#### 4.2.3.39 ExternalPurpose1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the external purpose code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

#### 4.2.3.40 ExternalServiceLevel1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the external service level code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

#### 4.2.3.41 ExternalStatusReason1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the status reason, as published in an external status reason code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

##### Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

#### 4.2.3.42 ExternalTaxAmountType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the nature, or use, of the amount in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

##### Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

#### 4.2.3.43 Frequency6Code

*Definition:* Specifies the regularity of an event.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.

#### 4.2.3.44 InvestigationLocationMethod1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the method used to deliver/retrieve the investigation information.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
EDIC	ElectronicDataInterchange	Investigation related data must be sent through Electronic Data Interchange (EDI).
EMAL	EMail	Investigation related data must be sent through e-mail.
FAXI	Fax	Investigation related data must be faxed.
POST	Post	Investigation related data must be sent through postal services.
SMSM	SMS	Investigation related data must be sent through by phone as a short message service (SMS).
URID	UniformResourceIdentifier	Investigation related data needs to be sent to a Uniform Resource Identifier (URI). URI is a compact string of characters that uniquely identify an abstract or physical resource. URI's are the super-set of identifiers, such as URLs, email addresses, ftp sites, etc, and as such, provide the syntax for all of the identification schemes.

#### 4.2.3.45 LanguageCode

*Definition:* Specifies a language.

*Type:* CodeSet

##### Constraints

- **ValidationByTable**

Must be a valid terrestrial language.

#### 4.2.3.46 MandateClassification1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the type of direct debit amount, such as fixed or variable.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
FIXE	Fixed	Direct debit amount is fixed.
USGB	UsageBased	Direct debit amount is based on usage.
VARI	Variable	Direct debit amount is variable.

#### 4.2.3.47 NamePrefix2Code

*Definition:* Specifies the terms used to formally address a person.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
DOCT	Doctor	Title of the person is Doctor or Dr.
MADM	Madam	Title of the person is Madam.
MISS	Miss	Title of the person is Miss.
MIST	Mister	Title of the person is Mister or Mr.
MIKS	GenderNeutral	Title of the person is gender neutral (Mx).

#### 4.2.3.48 PaymentMethod4Code

*Definition:* Specifies the transfer method that will be used to transfer an amount of money.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
CHK	Cheque	Written order to a bank to pay a certain amount of money from one person to another person.
TRF	CreditTransfer	Transfer of an amount of money in the books of the account servicer.
DD	DirectDebit	Collection of an amount of money from the debtor's bank account by the creditor. The amount of money and dates of collections may vary.
TRA	TransferAdvice	Transfer of an amount of money in the books of the account servicer. An advice should be sent back to the account owner.

#### 4.2.3.49 PreferredContactMethod1Code

*Definition:* Preferred method used to reach the individual contact within an organisation.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
LETT	Letter	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per letter.
MAIL	Email	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per email.
PHON	Phone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per phone.
FAXX	Fax	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per fax.
CELL	MobileOrCellPhone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per mobile or cell phone.

#### 4.2.3.50 Priority2Code

*Definition:* Specifies the priority level of an event.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
HIGH	High	Priority level is high.
NORM	Normal	Priority level is normal.

#### 4.2.3.51 RemittanceLocationMethod2Code

*Definition:* Specifies the method used to deliver the remittance advice information.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
FAXI	Fax	Remittance advice information must be faxed.
EDIC	ElectronicDataInterchange	Remittance advice information must be sent through Electronic Data Interchange (EDI).
URID	UniformResourceIdentifier	Remittance advice information needs to be sent to a Uniform Resource Identifier (URI). URI is a compact string of characters that uniquely identify an abstract or physical resource. URI's are the super-set of identifiers, such as URLs, email addresses, ftp sites, etc, and as such, provide the syntax for all of the identification schemes.
EMAL	EMail	Remittance advice information must be sent through e-mail.
POST	Post	Remittance advice information must be sent through postal services.
SMSM	SMS	Remittance advice information must be sent through by phone as a short message service (SMS).

#### 4.2.3.52 SequenceType3Code

*Definition:* Specifies the type of the current transaction that belongs to a sequence of transactions.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
FRST	First	First collection of a series of direct debit instructions.
RCUR	Recurring	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used for regular direct debit transactions initiated by the creditor.
FNAL	Final	Final collection of a series of direct debit instructions.
OOFF	OneOff	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used to initiate one single direct debit transaction.
RPRE	Represented	Collection used to re-present previously reversed or returned direct debit transactions.

#### 4.2.3.53 SettlementMethod1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the method used to settle the credit transfer instruction.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
INDA	InstructedAgent	Settlement is done by the agent instructed to execute a payment instruction.
INGA	InstructingAgent	Settlement is done by the agent instructing and forwarding the payment to the next party in the payment chain.
COVE	CoverMethod	Settlement is done through a cover payment.
CLRG	ClearingSystem	Settlement is done through a payment clearing system.

#### 4.2.3.54 TaxRecordPeriod1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the period related to the tax payment.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM01	FirstMonth	Tax is related to the second month of the period.
MM02	SecondMonth	Tax is related to the first month of the period.
MM03	ThirdMonth	Tax is related to the third month of the period.
MM04	FourthMonth	Tax is related to the fourth month of the period.
MM05	FifthMonth	Tax is related to the fifth month of the period.
MM06	SixthMonth	Tax is related to the sixth month of the period.
MM07	SeventhMonth	Tax is related to the seventh month of the period.
MM08	EighthMonth	Tax is related to the eighth month of the period.
MM09	NinthMonth	Tax is related to the ninth month of the period.
MM10	TenthMonth	Tax is related to the tenth month of the period.
MM11	EleventhMonth	Tax is related to the eleventh month of the period.
MM12	TwelfthMonth	Tax is related to the twelfth month of the period.
QTR1	FirstQuarter	Tax is related to the first quarter of the period.

CodeName	Name	Definition
QTR2	SecondQuarter	Tax is related to the second quarter of the period.
QTR3	ThirdQuarter	Tax is related to the third quarter of the period.
QTR4	FourthQuarter	Tax is related to the forth quarter of the period.
HLF1	FirstHalf	Tax is related to the first half of the period.
HLF2	SecondHalf	Tax is related to the second half of the period.

## 4.2.4 Date

### 4.2.4.1 ISODate

*Definition:* A particular point in the progression of time in a calendar year expressed in the YYYY-MM-DD format. This representation is defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

*Type:* Date

## 4.2.5 DateTime

### 4.2.5.1 ISODateTime

*Definition:* A particular point in the progression of time defined by a mandatory date and a mandatory time component, expressed in either UTC time format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sssZ), local time with UTC offset format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sss+/-hh:mm), or local time format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sss). These representations are defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

Note on the time format:

1) beginning / end of calendar day

00:00:00 = the beginning of a calendar day

24:00:00 = the end of a calendar day

2) fractions of second in time format

Decimal fractions of seconds may be included. In this case, the involved parties shall agree on the maximum number of digits that are allowed.

*Type:* DateTime

## 4.2.6 IdentifierSet

### 4.2.6.1 AnyBICDec2014Identifier

*Definition:* Code allocated to a financial or non-financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority, as described in ISO 9362: 2014 - "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* SWIFT; AnyBICIdentifier

#### Format

pattern [A-Z0-9]{4,4}[A-Z]{2,2}[A-Z0-9]{2,2}([A-Z0-9]{3,3}){0,1}

#### Constraints

- **AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### 4.2.6.2 BICFIDec2014Identifier

*Definition:* Code allocated to a financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority as described in ISO 9362: 2014 - "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* SWIFT; BICIdentifier

#### Format

pattern [A-Z0-9]{4,4}[A-Z]{2,2}[A-Z0-9]{2,2}([A-Z0-9]{3,3}){0,1}

#### Constraints

- **BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### 4.2.6.3 IBAN2007Identifier

*Definition:* The International Bank Account Number is a code used internationally by financial institutions to uniquely identify the account of a customer at a financial institution as described in the 2007 edition of the ISO 13616 standard "Banking and related financial services - International Bank Account Number (IBAN)" and replaced by the more recent edition of the standard.

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* National Banking Association; International Bank Account Number (ISO 13616)

#### Format

pattern [A-Z]{2,2}[0-9]{2,2}[a-zA-Z0-9]{1,30}

## Constraints

- **IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

### 4.2.6.4 LEIIdentifier

*Definition:* Legal Entity Identifier is a code allocated to a party as described in ISO 17442 "Financial Services - Legal Entity Identifier (LEI)".

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* Global LEI System; LEIIdentifier

#### Format

pattern [A-Z0-9]{18,18}[0-9]{2,2}

### 4.2.6.5 UUIDv4Identifier

*Definition:* Universally Unique Identifier (UUID) version 4, as described in IETF RFC 4122 "Universally Unique Identifier (UUID) URN Namespace".

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* RFC4122; UUIDv4

#### Format

pattern [a-f0-9]{8}-[a-f0-9]{4}-4[a-f0-9]{3}-[89ab][a-f0-9]{3}-[a-f0-9]{12}

## 4.2.7 Indicator

### 4.2.7.1 ChargeIncludedIndicator

*Definition:* Indicates whether charges have already been included.

*Type:* Indicator

*Meaning When True:* Included

*Meaning When False:* Pre-advised

### 4.2.7.2 TrueFalseIndicator

*Definition:* A flag indicating a True or False value.

*Type:* Indicator

*Meaning When True:* True

*Meaning When False:* False

## 4.2.8 Quantity

### 4.2.8.1 DecimalNumber

*Definition:* Number of objects represented as a decimal number, for example 0.75 or 45.6.

*Type:* Quantity

**Format**

totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	17

#### 4.2.8.2 Max3Number

*Definition:* Number (max 999) of objects represented as an integer.

*Type:* Quantity

**Format**

totalDigits	3
fractionDigits	0

**Constraints**

- **NumberRule**

If Number is negative, then Sign must be present.

#### 4.2.8.3 Number

*Definition:* Number of objects represented as an integer.

*Type:* Quantity

**Format**

totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	0

### 4.2.9 Rate

#### 4.2.9.1 BaseOneRate

*Definition:* Rate expressed as a decimal, for example, 0.7 is 7/10 and 70%.

*Type:* Rate

**Format**

totalDigits	11
fractionDigits	10
baseValue	1.0

#### 4.2.9.2 PercentageRate

*Definition:* Rate expressed as a percentage, that is, in hundredths, for example, 0.7 is 7/10 of a percent, and 7.0 is 7%.

*Type:* Rate

**Format**

totalDigits	11
fractionDigits	10
baseValue	100.0

## 4.2.10 Text

### 4.2.10.1 Exact2NumericText

*Definition:* Specifies a numeric string with an exact length of 2 digits.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

pattern	[0-9]{2}
---------	----------

### 4.2.10.2 Exact4AlphaNumericText

*Definition:* Specifies an alphanumeric string with a length of 4 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

pattern	[a-zA-Z0-9]{4}
---------	----------------

### 4.2.10.3 Max1025Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 1025 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	1025

### 4.2.10.4 Max105Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 105 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	105

### 4.2.10.5 Max128Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 128 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	128

**4.2.10.6 Max140Text**

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 140 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	140

**4.2.10.7 Max16Text**

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 16 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	16

**4.2.10.8 Max2048Text**

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 2048 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	2048

**4.2.10.9 Max34Text**

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 34 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	34

**4.2.10.10 Max350Text**

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 350 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	350

**4.2.10.11 Max35Text**

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 35 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	35

**4.2.10.12 Max4Text**

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**4.2.10.13 Max500Text**

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 500 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	500

**4.2.10.14 Max52Text**

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 52 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	52

**4.2.10.15 Max70Text**

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 70characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	70

**4.2.10.16 PhoneNumber**

*Definition:* The collection of information which identifies a specific phone or FAX number as defined by telecom services.

It consists of a "+" followed by the country code (from 1 to 3 characters) then a "-" and finally, any combination of numbers, "(", ")", "+" and "-" (up to 30 characters).

*Type:* Text

**Format**

pattern	\+[0-9]{1,3}-[0-9()+\-]{1,30}
---------	-------------------------------

**4.2.11 Year****4.2.11.1 ISOYear**

*Definition:* Year represented by YYYY (ISO 8601).

*Type:* Year